THE LEPIDOPTERIST'S GUIDE
FOR THE USE OF
THE YOUNG COLLECTOR
OF
BUTTERFLIES and MOTHS

BY

H. GUARD KNAGGS, M.D., F.L.S.,

Late Fellow and Member of Council of
The Entomological Society of London,
Vice-President of the Folkestone
Natural History and Microscopical Society,
One of the Founders and Original Co-proprietors, also
First Editor for British Lepidoptera (except Tineina) of
"The Entomologist's Monthly Magazine."

Author: New and Rare British Lepidoptera (except Tineina) in
Stainton's Entomologists' Annual, (eleven years),
The Lepidoptera of Folkestone, Pupa Hunting, etc.,
Contributor to Various Scientific and Popular Books and Periodicals.

THIRD EDITION.

CONSIDERABLY ENLARGED, FREELY ILLUSTRATED, AND BROUGHT TO
TWENTIETH CENTURY DATE.

CONTAINING ABOUT 170 PAGES, WITH ABOUT 120 ILLUSTRATIONS.

PRICE ONE SHILLING.

On the 1st of every Month. Price Sixpence.

THE ENTOMOLOGIST

AN ILLUSTRATED JOURNAL OF GENERAL ENTOMOLOGY.

EDITED BY RICHARD SOUTH, F.E.S.,

WITH THE ASSISTANCE OF

ROBERT ADKIN, F.E.S.
W. LUCAS DISTANT, F.E.S., &c.
EDWARD A. FITCH, F.L.S., F.E.S.
F. W. FROHAWK, F.E.S.
MARTIN JACOBY, F.E.S.

W. F. KIRBY, F.L.S., F.E.S.
G. W. KIRKALDY, F.E.S.
J. W. LUCAS, B.A., F.E.S.
Dr. D. SHARP, F.R.S., F.E.S., &c.
G. H. VERRALL, F.E.S.

Contains original articles on the general subjects of Entomology, Local Fauna Lists, Notes and Observations on the Habits of Insects, Records of Captures, Exchange List.

There are frequent Plates by the best Entomological Artists, and occasional Woodcuts.

LONDON: WEST, NEWMAN & CO., 54, Hatten Garden.

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, HAMILTON, KENT, & CO.

At least 24 pages 8vo, monthly, with frequent Illustrations.

PRICE SIXPENCE.

The Entomologist's Monthly Magazine:

EDITED BY

C. G. BARRETT, F.E.S.
G. C. CHAMPION, F.Z.S.
J. W. DOUGLAS, F.E.S.

W. W. FOWLER, M.A., F.L.S.
R. McLACHLAN, F.R.S.
E. SAUNDERS, F.L.S.

LORD WALSINGHAM, M.A., LL.D., F.R.S., &c.

THIS Magazine, commenced in 1864, contains standard articles on all subjects connected with Entomology and is more especially devoted to the insects of the British Isles. A **Second Series** was commenced in January, 1890.

Subscriptions (Six Shillings per annum, post free) may be sent to any one of the Editors, or to the Publishers.

Advertisements concerning Entomology, or Natural Science generally, inserted on very favourable terms.

The early Vols. of the First Series are out of print, but most of the others can be obtained, strongly bound in cloth, at 7s. each.

Communications should be addressed to the Editors, care of

GURNEY & JACKSON (Mr. JAN VOORST'S SUCCESSORS),

1, PATERNOSTER ROW, E.C.

The Lepidopterist's Guide,
FOR THE USE OF
THE YOUNG COLLECTOR
OF
Butterflies and Moths

BY

H. GUARD KNAGGS, M.D., F.L.S.,

One of the Founders and Original Co-Proprietors of The Entomologist's
Monthly Magazine.

THIRD EDITION.—FIRST THOUSAND.

LONDON :

GURNEY AND JACKSON, 1, PATERNOSTER ROW, E.C.

Successors to JOHN VAN VOORST.

TO
CHARLES GOLDING BARRETT, F.E.S.

ONE OF THE EDITORS OF "THE ENTOMOLOGIST'S MONTHLY MAGAZINE"

AND

AUTHOR OF "THE LEPIDOPTERA OF THE BRITISH ISLES"

A TRUE FRIEND OF FORTY YEARS STANDING
THE SOLE SURVIVOR OF THOSE DEPARTED FRIENDS

WHO HELPED ME
TO MAKE "THE GUIDE" WHAT IT IS

THIS LITTLE VOLUME
IS AFFECTIONATELY INSCRIBED.

PREFACE.

After a successful run of thirty years, with a sale of many thousand copies, it seems about time that this little book should be refreshed by further facts and methods, which have been added to our *repertoire* since its publication. With this in view my first idea was to rewrite it, and for this purpose a mass of matter was accumulated; but as this procedure would have necessitated a considerable increase in the price and size of the volume, I have been strongly dissuaded from doing so by my friends and by my publishers. I have therefore contented myself with adding to "the Guide" (in its original form) an appendix, which I hope will bring the book to the requirements of collectors of the twentieth century. In this endeavour valuable assistance has been given by the following friends:—Messrs. H. A. Auld, C. G. Barrett, W. C. Boyd, C. Fenn, S. G. Hills, R. South, and Sydney Webb, to whom my best acknowledgments and thanks are due.

As stated in the original preface, the object of "the Guide" is to teach the young entomologist how to collect, to observe, and to reason for himself, as occasion may require or suggest, in order that he may be fitted to enter upon higher studies, and to accurately record facts and observations, for Science to work up into system, and I trust and believe that this object has been attained.

Though I look back with pride and satisfaction to the success achieved, and with gratitude to those who have taken me as their "Guide," the pleasure of this retrospect is leavened with sorrow, at the loss of those dear old friends who helped me to make the book what it is. All, all are gone—but one—It's my turn next.

FOLKESTONE, 1901.

H. GUARD KNAGGS.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

American Naturalist.—"We advise every Lepidopterist to provide himself with a copy."

Canadian Entomologist.—"From being a book of *instructions*, some may think that it must be a pretty dry sort of affair, but we can assure them that it is quite the reverse, being really most interesting and amusing."

The Australasian.—"The amount of practical information, given in clear language, far exceeds that of the same sort to be found in any other work. The author has obviously been an enthusiast for years in such pursuits, and gives his readers the benefit of a very large experience."

"The Butterflies of India, Burmah and Ceylon," by Major Marshall, R.E., and L. de Nicéville of the "Indian Museum." "For further information on all matters connected with the collection of insects . . . we would recommend collectors to obtain Dr. Knaggs's Guide."

Science Gossip.—"The author has such a happy knack of popularizing his subject, so facile in saying a plain thing in a plain way, so clear in his instructions, so hearty and enthusiastic in his work, that any one would wish himself an ignoramus again to have the pleasure of such a teacher."

Popular Science Review.—"Dr. Knaggs is not a compiler, but simply an entomologist who writes his experiences. Everything he says is worthy of attention."

Scientific Opinion.—"Dr. Knaggs has put together a multitude of notes, the result of years of observation and experience, and such as could never have been prepared by any mere compiler. Indeed the volume surprises us by the enormous mass of information it contains."

The Record.—"It is one of those few books whose performance exceeds its promise. . . . To experts the very name of the author will be sufficient guarantee for the thoroughness of the work. We only wish that there had been such a book when we first commenced entomology."

The Field.—"The work is one of the most exhaustive character, and is exceedingly well arranged for practical use. . . . Although really a working book, it is written in a most pleasant manner, and the enthusiasm of the author is sometimes very amusing."

The Observer.—"Dr. Knaggs's little volume supplies a want in a manner that could not be surpassed. . . . Although professedly written for the assistance of youth, children of a larger growth, in whom the taste has developed into a study, will find an inexhaustible field of instruction in its pages."

City Press.—"Dr. Knaggs dedicates his work to young collectors ; but old hands may get many a wrinkle from it."

Appendix to the Guide.

INTRODUCTION.

The art and mystery of successfully collecting and preserving butterflies and moths is a craft which demands a diligent apprenticeship of practice, study, and thought. But there could be no more enjoyable and absorbing occupation for leisure hours. To the entomologist every country walk brings instruction and delight, increasing his love of Nature, and strengthening the charms of a life long study—potent solace of old age. The pursuit also leads to some knowledge of the sister subject, Botany—in itself a source of perennial pleasure—and finally it fosters habits of early rising, memory, punctuality, observation, and discrimination, besides involving plenty of gentle open air exercise, than which nothing is more conducive to health.

The beginner should make a point of examining collections, private and public, and should lose no opportunity of being introduced to, and of associating with his entomological brethren, among whom, if he be of a congenial disposition, and a good listener, he will probably find some, willing to assist him with information, or perhaps even to give him a start with specimens.

In his endeavours to ascertain all that occurs in the lives of his subjects from egg to maturity, it is imperative that he keep a systematic record of the results of his observations, otherwise they will pass from his mind, or, at least,

will not be available as positive data when needed for purposes of reference, comparison, or making captures in future seasons. Of course each collector must decide for himself the form in which to keep his diary. Probably there is no better system than that of day book and ledger with index.

Of course a good many entries in the diary, especially those relating to the earlier stages, will at first have to be made in the form of descriptions, the species not being determined till some time afterwards. These, when known, should be entered into the ledger, in the page, or pages, devoted to the insect, and then the name and number of the page should be inserted in the index.

Another way is to use ruled paper, cross-lined in columns, and in these you can enter first consecutive numbers, corresponding with tickets on the specimens; then the date, the locality, the name if known, the stage, etc. By employing letters, symbols, and abbreviations, a great deal of information may be conveyed in a small space.

At first the beginner will catch everything he sees, but as his stock of experience grows, his captures will be fewer, until at length, if he wish to add to his collection, he will need, before setting forth, to prepare himself with a knowledge of the habits of the particular species which he desires to capture.

And here, I would strongly advise the reader to become accustomed to the technical names at an early period of his career. They are easily picked up, even by those who have not had the advantage of a classical education:—they are essential to intelligible conversation with more advanced students, but they are absolutely necessary when reference has to be made to books, whether English or foreign. For though we do, not uncommonly, loosely refer to certain well known insects, in such terms as “Swifts,” “Eggars,” “Prominents,” “Tigers,” and the rest (as in this book), it is, I must confess, a very bad habit; therefore, do as I tell you—not as I do.

To capture species in all parts of the kingdom would obviously involve much expenditure of time and money. Fortunately the Post Office supplies the means of overcoming the difficulty. To create a circle of postal coadjutors, it is a good plan to *freely* offer some local insect (having first secured a stock of good, and properly set, specimens) and to select as future correspondents such of the applicants as seem from their topographical situation or for other reasons, desirable. But remember, if you receive nothing in return, not even

thanks, do not complain, or you lay yourself under the reproach of having been insincere in your professed generosity—of having given a sprat to catch a whale. Or you may publish a list of your duplicates and desiderata and invite “exchange”—a system which is all very well so long as it does not degenerate into huckstering. In preparing specimens for correspondents, spare no pains, and send as ample consignments as you can. No man is a loser by having a character for liberality.

To the young collector, the most essential book of reference is Stainton’s “Manual” (which can be purchased for half-a-sovereign, or less second-hand); for, though this work has been published nearly half a century, nothing to compare with it, in usefulness or accuracy, has since been produced—at the price. It only requires bringing to date in regard to species that have since been discovered, and to the few that have lapsed. Another book that is good besides being cheap is Newman’s “British Butterflies and Moths,” containing figures of all species of *Macro-lepidoptera* known at the time of publication. Either of these, with some reliable author’s “British Flora,” will suffice the entomologist of moderate means. But the well-to-do, who can afford it, will, *of course*, supply themselves with the splendidly illustrated, and in every way excellent, albeit costly, “*Lepidoptera of the British Isles*,” by Mr. C. G. Barrett, in which special attention is given to the range of variation in each species, with life-like coloured figures of every known British species, and, when possible, of all remarkable varieties and aberrations, together with the habits of every species in the winged state.

From Douglas’ “World of Insects,” Shield’s “Practical Hints,” and Greene’s “Insect Hunters’ Companion” (revised and enlarged by Mr. A. B. Farn) also, some useful hints may be obtained. A modern hand-book on the principle of “Merrin’s Calender,” in tabular form, but more comprehensive in scope, would be an immense acquisition, particularly if it could be produced for a shilling. As the collector advances he would derive advantage from subscribing to one or other of the periodicals devoted to his hobby, say, “The Entomologist’s Monthly Magazine,” or “The Entomologist.” Once more let me remind the reader that “Stainton’s Manual” is a *sine-quâ-non*.

N.B.—In the notes which follow, references to “the Guide” are made in numerals at the end of paragraphs and elsewhere.

EGG STATE OR OVUM.

Collecting.

As to the appearances of eggs, it would seem advisable to add a few more to those already mentioned at page 3. Eggs of *Noctua* are generally spherical and ribbed, those of the *Sphingidae* and *Arctiidae*, globular and pearly, the eggs of *Bombyces* and *Geometridae* being more or less oblong and somewhat depressed.

Among butterflies, the eggs of *Limenitis* are to be found on the edges of leaves near the tip, *Colias* on the undersides of leaves. The *Lycanidae* select flower stems, *L. Arion* laying pale green eggs between the flower stems of Thyme; while *A. cardamines* deposits singly on flower stalks or in the centre of the racemes. Of *Bombyces*, *L. quercus* lays oval mottled eggs—miniatures of sky-lark's. Of "Prominents" *P. trepida* deposits a large white egg on bark or twigs. The eggs of *P. plumi-* *H. hyperanthus*. *gera*, which are light umber brown, with a white base, should be sought in March or April on Maple in hedges *openly* and *sunnily situated*, in groups of two or three together, often near a bud; those of *N. cucullina* (of a dull

C. nupta.

C. fraxini.

greenish colour and very small) are placed on the underside of maple leaves in *shady situations*, rarely more than two on a leaf. Amongst *Noctua*, eggs of *H. suasa* form large conspicuous patches on plantain seed heads, in Essex marshes; those of *A. ophiogramma* may be detected on the curled and faded edges of old leaves of garden "ribbon grass" near the tip; while *C. flavicornis* deposits on birch shoots, and the eggs, originally green, turn red before hatching; *T. pronuba*'s eggs are small and grey, and laid in great batches, of eight or nine hundred, on broad leaved grasses; and those of *N. lutosa* are concealed under the neatly folded edge of the reed leaf.—3.

Management.

Concerning the duration of the egg state, these leading facts should be noted; they are condensed from valuable notes supplied by Mr. C. Fenn. I wish that I had room to give them *in extenso*.

Most *Geometers* remain in this state from a week to a month. (Exceptions: "The Thorns" $8\frac{3}{4}$ months; *H. pennaria*, 5 months; *H. aurantiaria*, 5 months; *C. boreata*, 5 months; *O. filigrammaria*, $4\frac{3}{4}$ months; *C. testata*, 8 months; *ascularia*, 37 days; *cervinata*, $5\frac{1}{2}$ months; *C. spartiata*, 8 months; *H. leucophearia*, 38 days.)

Most *Noctuæ*, from one week to three (exceptions: *A. sambusaria*. *pistacina*, 4 months; *C. sponsa*, 7 months; *T. populeti*, $4\frac{1}{2}$ months; *T. pastinum*, *N. sobrina*, *T. leucographa* and *E. lutulenta*, one month.)

Most *Bombyces*, one to three weeks (exceptions: *O. antiqua*, 9 months; *T. cratægi*, $5\frac{1}{2}$ months; *H. dispar*, 9 months; *P. monacha*, 8 months; *P. plumigera*, 6 months; *P. populi*, $4\frac{1}{2}$ months.)

Butterflies: *A. galatea*, 15 days; *A. cardamines*, 9 days.—10.

Inducing butterflies to lay.—Have ready potted *Poa* and other grasses for the *Satyridæ* and *Hesperidæ* (except *comma*); Clover for *Colias* and many of the *Lycanidæ*; Violet for *Argynnis*; Nettle for *Vanesidæ*; plantain for *Melitæa*, and so on. Water to drink acts as an incentive to lay, and so too do water-melon, sleepy pears, bananas, jam, etc., but have a care if ants be about, for they will be attracted by such dainties. Then, into the laying cage put a male or two, and a female or two together. An isolated female is apt to mope over lost liberty, while company induces animation, and when a lady gets knocked over by a lively male, she generally goes to the food, and deposits at any rate one egg. N.B.—Muslin is a better protection against the scorching sun rays than a leafy bough. Butterflies generally lay in the early morning sunshine.—6.

The food plant must also be present with certain moths, *P. tersata* and *vitalbata*, *L. hexapterata* and *E. heparata*, for instance, otherwise they will not lay. Remember, too, not to interfere with eggs, especially such as are changing colour; even variations of temperature and humidity may be fatal.—7.

A. prunaria.

Observation.

In a batch of eggs, the size and colour may vary—those first laid are apt to be the largest—perhaps because they are female.

If you can get insects to deposit their eggs on clear and transparent glass, it will greatly facilitate examination under the microscope. Some years ago I got *B. urticalis*, which lays a very transparent egg, to deposit in this manner, and observed that the changes, taking place in the contents, could be watched with great ease.—9.

THE CATERPILLAR OR LARVA

Phorodesma bajularia

Ph. smaragdaria

CATERPILLAR STATE OR LARVA.

Collecting.

Cannibals. The young larva collector should early acquaint himself with the appearance of those bloodthirsty monsters the larvæ of *S. satellitia* and *C. trapezina*, in order that he may avoid mixing them with other larvæ. This is the description of *satellitita*, "dark brown with three white lines on the back of the second segment, and a white spot on the second, third, fourth, fifth, and twelfth segments, below the spiracular line." And this of *trapezina*: "greenish, with the dorsal, subdorsal, and spiracular lines white, the spots black or dark green." For the position of the lines, &c., see "Caterpillar State," "How to describe."—57-59.

Besides the wretches above named, there are others, not strict vegetarians, which do not object to a little animal food, such as *C. elinguaris*, *E. lineolata*; others which must not be kept short of food or crowded, as *A. ripe*. *Eup. coronata* and *minutata*, which are apt to take on cannibalistic habits. Then there are some who don't seem to become vicious till full fed, as *T. miniosa*, which nip their relatives on the end segments, and *A. cardamines* which nips them across the neck, often causing them to dwindle and die. Then the "Shark" (*Cucullia verbasci*) in which, when on short commons, the larger specimens devour the smaller ones, leaving only the heads. Some, as *Th. quereus* and *W-album* and *C. hera*, wait for their brothers and sisters to become pupæ and then take a mean advantage of their helplessness to gobble them up. *Dianthæcia* eating the pupa of *Eupithecia*—*L. complana* the pupa of *N. mundana*—*A. saucia* making a meal off the dead and dried body of *A. ripe* are further instances; but the cannibal for which I have a positive admiration is *Eup. ex-pallidata* which feasted off mulberry coloured *Aphides* on *Solidago*.—23 and 44.

Most Butterfly Larvæ feed by night and may then be found. Those that are gregarious and web makers, such as *A. cratægi* and the *Vanessidæ*, feed by day, while small, returning betimes to their homes. The larvæ of *Actæon* rest by day on the flat surface of the leaves of *Calamagrostis epijegos*.—17, 18.

Thecla rubi.

Tin or Zinc Collecting Boxes will be required. Two kinds are shown in the marginal figures, —the larger one, it will be observed, is fitted with a funnel, *a a*, with a lower opening, *b*, through which the larvæ are passed into the interior. There are perforated or

wire-gauze lids, *c* and *d*, at each end for ventilation, a strap, *e*, for the purpose of slinging the whole over the shoulder, and a string, *f*, to prevent the mislaying of the frequently opened lid *c*. The lid, *d*, fits tightly, and is only removed for the purpose of inserting food or emptying out the contents.

—12, 24.

Boxes, either small tin ones, or card "purple shouldered" pill boxes (if with glass bottoms so much the better, as the contents are visible, without opening the box and there is less danger of crushing), are necessary when caterpillars have to be kept separate from the bulk of captures, either on account of supposed rarity, or vicious habits.—12.

The Bignell tray is a very ingenious contrivance which, though presenting a considerable surface for our beatings, yet folds up into an exceedingly small compass. It is invaluable for "beating," and may be obtained of most naturalists.—23.

Indications of the presence of certain caterpillars may be observed from a distance, for instance: *Plusia orichalcea* bites the stems of the *Eupatorium*, thus reducing the top leaves to the withered condition in which this larva prefers them as food. Other species have a similar habit, such as *H. auroraria*, and also *C. sagittata* and *Pt. teucree* mentioned at page 15. The *Deilephila* strip their food plant as they go, and thus their presence is apparent,

O. fascelina.

further clue to their whereabouts.—13.

After boisterous storms, caterpillars, shaken or washed from

their positions on trees, are sometimes very evident upon the ground beneath, thus *H. asellus* and *A. aceris* may be found, in addition to those mentioned at page 22.

By pale frass protruding from holes in tree trunks, branches, shoots, twigs etc., the presence of clearwing caterpillars, and other internal feeders is revealed. Their position and time of being full fed may thus be tabulated. N.B.—Most of these take two years to feed up.

S. apiformis, trunks of poplar Ve.

S. bembeciformis, lower part of willows

VI.

T. scoliiforme, trunks of birch Ve.

T. sphegiforme, shoots of alder Vb.

T. cynipiforme, bark-oak VI.

T. culiciforme, stumps birch Vm.

T. myopiforme, trunks apple V.

T. formiciforme, lower end osier Ve.

Those feeding in lower plants are :—

T. chrysidiforme, roots of dock and sorrel VIe.

T. ichneumoniforme, roots *Lotus corniculatus* VIe.

T. philanthiforme, heart of thrift VIB.

N.B.—*T. allantiforme* probably feeds in this country in *Viburnum lantana* (wild guelder rose) *T. vespiiforme* in stems and roots of aspen. Whenever these, or indeed any of the above mentioned trees, have been cut down in likely localities, a careful look out should be kept on the stumps. Most of the wood and bark feeding clearwings seem to prefer trees which have been cut down to those which are entire. The saw used

for the purpose of detaching the logs containing the full fed caterpillars or chrysalids is of the "key-hole" pattern, but very strongly made; the chisel used, too, should be broad and stout. Often by cautiously bending a bough or shoot in different directions a crack in a weakened part of the bark will appear, indicating the position of the occupant beneath it. This is the method of locating *sphegiforme*.

The full fed larvæ of *T. chrysidiforme* are to be found at the crown of the root or up the flower stem of dock or sorrel; that of *philanthiforme* in the crown of the heart of thrift (*Statice armeria*); while *ichneumoniforme* selects the root itself of *Lotus corniculatus*, often the outside of it, to which it is attached, though it not unfrequently happens that it becomes detached in uprooting the plant. It is therefore very necessary to carefully examine the hole from which the root has been abstracted. All these may be kept in slightly damp sand, in a gauze covered box, until the moths emerge.—16.

The Galleridæ delight to establish themselves in ill-constructed bee nests and hives, containing an accumulation of old comb. Their presence may be suspected from an air of dejection on the part of the bees. In the case of a hive, a further clue is afforded by bits of bee-bread and gunpowder—like droppings of the larvæ on the bottom board. The way in which the female *A.*

grisella attacks, is thus: towards the close of day, she may be seen hovering near the entrance of the hive, her object being to dart past the sentinels, and gain the interior. If she is caught she is torn to pieces, but if she succeeds, the chief danger is over, and she proceeds to lay her eggs, for which purpose she is supplied with a wonderful ovipositor.

Feeling, by passing the hand along the branches and twigs, will sometimes detect the larvæ of *L. quercus* or *G. quercifolia* which are easily missed by sight.

Diceranura vinula.

Management.

Courtice's breeding cage is very easily constructed. It may be of any four sided shape or size. Lengths of angle wood are obtained, and four pieces of glass are joined, two at a time, by first cementing each pair together at right angles, with an appropriate length of the angled wood, B.B. by means of glue and litherage, and when these are dry, the two pairs are connected in the same way, thus forming the sides of the cage which is then covered with a muslin top, D, and stood upon a perforated felted slate; it is a good substitute for the cylinder cage, if there is any difficulty in procuring cylinders.—31.

Breeding house. When an apartment of a house, instead of an out-house is used, it should be provided with a Venetian blind, in order that, in summer time, the direct sunrays should not be upon the cages. It must be remembered too that the air of a house is generally drier than that of an out-house.—33.

A fern pan, Mr. Ficklin tells me, containing soil and a good thickness of *Sphagnum*, and covered by a bell glass, when filled up with food and larvæ, forms a very useful cage in which the food will keep fresh for a long time. *Mem.*—All air-tight cages should be opened and the food stirred at least once a day.

Many collectors hold that there should be but little space in the cage

unoccupied by food ; otherwise, they say, on falling off a leaf or stem, certain larvæ may long wander to and fro fasting. Some collectors imagine that caterpillars are blind, and in fact their range of vision is very imperfect, not extending to more than two-fifths of an inch. Their sense of touch is their strong point. However, one is on the safe side in treating them as inmates of an asylum for the blind.

Larvarium. In constructing this, one of the requisites mentioned (p. 31) is an unglazed earthenware plate. I find that tin plates of similar size and shape are made and, being lighter, not liable to breakage, and more easily drilled, may be substituted if preferred.—31.

Soil in breeding cages—except under exceptional circumstances, as when nearly full fed larvæ have subterranean habits, ought not to be allowed, otherwise many, especially small caterpillars, will be lost or injured in the changing process, and frass, getting mixed with the soil, may become mouldy, and form centres of insanitation.

For larvæ pupating above ground—naturally, in rotten wood, decayed bark, dead leaves, or other rubbish, or on the surface of the earth a little German "moss litter," with a quantity of *Sphagnum* over it, and odds and ends of rotten wood, virgin cork, short lengths of hollow stems, wine corks scooped out, and such like are very serviceable ; they should not be allowed to become too dry. Larvæ must not be disturbed when pupating until the change is thoroughly completed—a process that occupies at least a week ; indeed *Xanthia* remain for several weeks in the cocoon before changing.

A dark chamber (p. 11 ante) in which nearly full fed larvæ can be accommodated until they go to earth to pupate, may be thus made; Two small flower pots, H and J are joined together by the nut O, at their bases, their combined height being just equal to the depth of the large flower pot G. It is held in place by cement K, and a stemless wine-glass M, is in like manner embedded in cement L, in the pot H. The wine glass is for water, and the space N, is for soil (of which perhaps there is nothing better than "German moss litter," which is clean, light, and free from vermin, and easy for larvæ to enter. The top of the figure represents a flat slate A (resting on the top inner and outer pots) covered with felt B, and with an opening at C for the passage of food, and at E and D for larvæ to descend to earth. A cylinder F, with muslin top, surmounts the whole. Slips of tin, bent roofwise, like P, may be placed over the holes D and E in order to prevent frass from falling through into the soil. When all the caterpillars have gone down, the felted slate, with the cylinder, may be removed, and a stiff crinoline cylinder substituted, of a circumference which will just clasp the flower pot G.

Tickets, bearing numbers or letters, or both, (postage stamp paper will do) should be stuck on each breeding cage, and these should correspond with entries in our breeding house diaries, recording dates of moulting, changes of colour, &c. These observations when complete should be entered in the appropriate place in the ledger mentioned at p. 2 ante.

Hibernating larvæ, those which pass the winter above ground, such as *M. cinxia*, *P. smaragdaria*, *Acidalia* and various others may be placed in muslin bags or muslin covered boxes, with dry stems, leaves, and sprigs of their food plant, and hung up in an outhouse till food can be obtained for them—or they may be sleeved on to plants where they happen to feed on shrubs or trees, as *e.g.* *smaragdaria* and others. Some little hibernators pass the winter in cocoons. The little caterpillars of *L. salicis* congregate several together in a small cocoon under willow or poplar bark, and *Nephopteryx genistella* also hibernates in a sort of silken cocoon. A Canadian gentleman says that he has met with excellent results from placing small hibernators in pill boxes, and these into a tin box, and keeping them for five months under the sawdust below an ice-house.—44.

Sleeving (my former disparaging remarks nevertheless and notwithstanding) is a method that many people adopt with great success. The important thing is so to tie the branch that when the wind blows it will not sway it

in such a manner as to injure the sleeve. In the case of larvæ ready to go to earth, the sleeve may be lengthened down to a pot, furnished with suitable soil upon the ground.—29.

To keep food fresh and to convey growing plants to a distance, place them in a tin box and fill up with earth shaken down, in which situation they will survive for at least a fortnight. My old friend, the late Dr. Boswell (Syme), when he went on botanical excursions, generally carried, slung over his shoulder, a gigantic japanned vasculum, made precisely on the lines of an ordinary sandwich box, and people used to stare and say, "My! what a twist that chap must have!"

FIFTY MORE SUBSTITUTE FOOD PLANTS (NON-ALLIED) p. 38.

SUBSTITUTES		EXAMPLES	SUBSTITUTES		EXAMPLES
Ash	Lime	<i>P. populi</i>	Linaria	Silene	<i>Dipsacea</i>
Bilberry	Strawberry	<i>Immanata</i>	Lotus	Millfoil	<i>Zonaria</i>
"	Whitethorn	<i>Solidaginis</i>	"	Sallow	<i>Rubricata</i>
"	Plantain	<i>Baja</i>	Mallow	Thistle	<i>Cardui</i>
Birch	Apple	<i>Monacha</i>	Nettle	H. agrimony	<i>Dominula</i>
"	Lime	<i>Pudibunda</i>	"	Currant	<i>C-album</i>
"	Fir	<i>Abietaria</i>	"	Mint	<i>Urticalis</i>
Bramble	Elder	<i>Sambuc-aria</i>	Oak	Sycamore	<i>Aceris</i>
"	Dandelion	<i>Bisetata</i>	Primrose	Violet	<i>Euphrosyne</i>
Burdock	W. Dead Nettle	<i>Chrysitis</i>	"	P. Dead Nettle	<i>Janthina</i>
Buckthorn	Whitethorn	<i>Spinula</i>	Privet	Elder	<i>Syringaria</i>
Centaureia	Hypericum	<i>Satyrata</i>	"	Rose	<i>Abruptaria</i>
"	Campanula	<i>Centaureata</i>	Rose	Lilac	<i>Alni</i>
"	Lotus	<i>Atomaria</i>	"	Nettle	<i>Polychloros</i>
"	Poterium	<i>Globularia</i>	Scabious	Yarrow	<i>Oblongata</i>
Clematis	Cytisus	<i>Prunaria</i>	"	Ononis	<i>Exoleta</i>
Golden rod	Restharrow	<i>Ochrata</i>	"	Trefoil	<i>Vetusta</i>
Hazel	Sycamore.	<i>Camelina</i>	"	Golden Rod	<i>Ashworthii</i>
Hemp agrimony	Mercury	<i>Bractea</i>	"	Bedstraw	<i>Fuciformis</i>
Holly	Dogwood	<i>Argiolus</i>	Sedge	Iris	<i>Festuca</i>
Honeysuckle	Whitethorn	<i>Degeneraria</i>	Sorrel	Tormentil	<i>Venustula</i>
"	Hop	<i>Porphyrea</i>	Thyme	Chenopodium	<i>Straminata</i>
"	Dead Nettle	<i>Iota</i>	Vetch	Spiræa	<i>Marginepunctata</i>
"	Pea	<i>Flavicincta</i>	"	Ling	<i>Obscurea</i>
			"	Valerian	<i>Promutata</i>

To generally favourite foods I should like to add whitethorn to the shrubs; and "Honesty" (*Lunaria biennis*) to the low plants. This latter is, to the bulk of *Noctuidæ* what *P. aviculare*, is to the *Geometridæ*.—39.

Water bath and drink seem very necessary to the well being of certain larvæ, and especially those of Prominents and *Bombyces*. These would thrive much better with a shallow vessel of water in their cages for drink, and the occasional exposure to a shower or even a douche. This treatment is very essential to the well being of such species as *S. fagi*, *O. potatoria* and others.

N. siczac.

The *Psychidæ* too like their food besprinkled. When quite full fed, certain larvæ will wander about, looking as miserable as if they were searching for the number of their grave, instead of rationally making their cocoons, or going to earth. A drink of water or a douche will often put these disconsolate creatures in the humour to spin up. Tempting foods and artificial warmth, especially after exposure to cold, also tend to expedite the process. For diarrhœa in hairy and other larvæ, a warm bath, and drying with blotting paper and sunshine or warmth, is recommended.

Larvæ of Notodontidæ—notably *trepida*, *cucullina* and *carmelita*, when first hatched cannot hold on to the leaf. If these helpless infants are placed between layers of leaves, tucked into a dry tube or lamp chimney, and kept out of sunshine, they will probably, at the end of a week, be able to look after themselves. All newly hatched larvæ are best kept in a shady position for a week or so. Young larvæ should never be sent by post till after the first moult. The larvæ of *S. fagi* eats nothing but its own egg shell, till after the first moult. *Fagi* should have plenty of room and not be crowded, for the young ant-like larvæ are apt to get congregated into a ball, in a hopeless scrimmage.

S. fagi.

Some enterprising larvæ, such as those of *G. canella* and *A. lotella*, especially when full fed, will make prodigious efforts to escape from the breeding cage; canvas should be *glued* over the top, or a barrier of grease—a thing hateful to larvæ—may be interposed between them and liberty.

Rearing Psychidæ. Collect your specimens as soon after winter as possible; put them in a spacious box covered with wire gauze, and having at the bottom, first a layer of peat, and then a layer of moss; provide them with abundance of fresh food (many are satisfied with *Poa annua*); place the box in an east aspect, sun rays being indispensable; be careful to supply food, until you are quite certain that pupation has taken place; suspend to the sides of the cage any cases that are not fixed; and finally keep a sharp look out for emergences, as males will soon knock themselves to pieces in their efforts to get to the females. Emergences of *villosella* male and *nigricans* male generally occur between 5 and 7 p.m. N.B.—The case of *villosella* male is shorter and stouter than that of the female, and thereby the sexes may be separated.

Rearing Tortrices.—Leaf rollers may be put into tins or

tied over with muslin or covered over with glass. Ventilate frequently, remembering that the more succulent the food (which by the way should never be damp), the more ventilation will be necessary. The same instructions apply to shoot feeders whose food is hard. Shoot feeders whose food is soft should be put in a pot tied over with calico; dry moss must be introduced to absorb moisture; and though glass may be put on to keep the food from withering, frequent admission of air is essential. In the case of *Sciaphila* etc., it is perhaps best to tie the flowers in a bunch, and let them hang down in a pot surrounded by air. All shoot feeders try to escape, so care must be taken to fasten the calico securely. They prefer crumpled gauze or dry moss to spin up in. As moths, on emergence, are apt to sulk at the bottom of the pot, it is better to take out the pupæ, and put them on a soft material in card boxes. *Retinea* is easy to breed, as the shoots do not become mouldy. Some which hibernate in cocoons must have winter exposure. Some which keep in seed heads (*Antithesia*) are also easy, and if kept cool may be wintered indoors. Others which leave the seed pods, will spin tough cocoons on rotten wood or calico and may be wintered indoors. *Carpocapsa*, *Endopisa*, *Catoptria* are quickly fed up, but are terrible ones to try to escape to pupate; they must be very tightly tied down, and pieces of rotten wood, cork, hollow sticks or stems, rags, paper, etc., introduced. Do not forget to stop the hole at the bottom of the pot, and winter out of doors. Hard stem feeders require moist earth or sand to prevent drying up; so do root feeders, these are best collected in spring, and are not easily detected till the larvæ have grown; most of them change in the stems, but some wander. Soft stem feeders should be collected in the autumn, and should be kept in moist earth as long as possible, afterwards feed them in a pot, but be careful about mould; keep them in a cool place, or out of doors for the winter. Rotten wood feeders should be kept in tins; bark and gall feeders are best collected when full fed, or in the pupal state.

Shoots, rolled leaves, twisted buds, etc., containing *full fed* larvæ of *Tineina* or *Tortrices* are best deposited in brown paper or canvas bags, closely tied and hung up out of doors till April.

Aglossa has merely to be put into a box containing barn refuse which serves it for food and clothing. It does not show itself until it is full fed, when it may be seen ascending the sides of the box in order to pupate. *Pyralis* likes to make a gallery under some structure, such as a corn bin, where it generally makes up for pupa.

Rearing Bryophilæ. Stop the hole in a flower pot, then collect a lot of lichen until you have sufficient to cover the bottom of the pot to the depth of half an inch or an inch, put in the caterpillars and keep the pot facing the light, the larvæ will soon begin to construct their artful places of retreat,

and will feed almost whenever you choose to give them a slight sprinkling of water (this may be a hint for collecting them) at other than their natural times to breakfast and dine, which is when their food is bedewed, in the early morning, and towards evening. N.B.—When you cannot procure lichens for species feeding on them, try moss, or dead leaves. —30.

The Home Examination,—of sackfuls of dead leaves, moss, etc, from likely localities, suggested in the Guide (20), has resulted, among other finds, in the discovery of at least one life history, new to Science viz.; that of *O. ericetana*, by Mr. C. G. Barrett.

Preservation.

Larva preserving, it will be remembered, was but lightly touched upon in the original Guide, so little was then generally known on this subject, but now the art has been brought to perfection by Lord Walsingham. His instructions are to take a larva which has changed its skin about two days, when the colours are at their best and less likely to fade, and kill it by immersion in spirits, then roll out the interior on blotting paper, with a small wooden pointed roller, which will answer for larvæ of different sizes, taking care to keep the surface quite dry. Begin rolling first near the aperture to get the entrail well started, then begin again near the head and work gradually downwards, not pressing too hard or you may remove the pigment from the inner surface of the skin.

Now the following apparatus will be required: An iron tripod with wire gauze top, A—a spirit lamp, B—a setting needle, C—some small glass blow-pipes (made by drawing out a glass tube over the spirit-lamp), sizes according to the larva to be operated on, E—a “spray bellows” such as used for throat affections—(the German article answers the purpose admirably and is very inexpensive) D—and a hairpin F, or piece of bent wire.

The larva having been prepared as above, insert a blowpipe of suitable size into the skin of the larva, but not so far as to include the bulge, fix the other end of the blowpipe in the india-rubber tube of the bellows, light the spirit lamp under the tripod, and, holding the blow pipe with the attached larva skin over the guarded flame, inflate so gently and gradually as not to blow the skin off

the bulge, but to dry it first at the anal end, (which will adhere to the glass tube) and then thoroughly all over, until it is quite stiff, and will retain its form in the required position.

His lordship says that he manipulates the skins by putting the blowing ball into his mouth, thus keeping both hands free, one to hold the blowpipe, and the other, at first, to hold the larva on the bulge with the setting needle, until it dries sufficiently to hold itself, and secondly, to give a turn to the body with a hairpin or bent wire in the act of drying. Fig. F.

Now push off the larva from the tube very carefully so as not to break the anal feet, and mount it in any way that may be desired, with '*colle forte à froid*,' (the French "cold glue").

A little dry colour poured into the skin and shaken about will replace the delicate green tints when necessary, for green nearly always fades over the heat—this can easily be inserted by means of a small spoon made of a strip of dried grass cut lengthwise to size.—60.

The figure G shows Mr. Auld's arrangement by which the larva skin can be kept in position by the pressure of a piece of watch spring whipped on to the blowpipe.

For scientific purposes, Prof. Riley points out that larvæ may be preserved in brine, spirit, or the more modern medium *Formalin*. NOTE.—*Formalin* (a 35 per cent. solution of *Formic Aldehyde*) is especially useful, (diluted about 25 times) as a hardening agent for microscopic objects, and (about ten times) for museum specimens, as it does not cause shrinking or clouding of tissue, and all colours, but greens, are well preserved.

CHRYSALIS STATE OR PUPA.

Collecting.

Feeling with the hand down tree trunks, palings, &c., will detect inequalities, which are often missed by the eye. Especially is this the case in searching for the chrysalis of *T. Lichenaria*, on lichen-covered palings.

G. rhamui.

It is very desirable that the approximate times of emergence from the chrysalis of all species, at large, should be noted; knowledge thus accumulated is invaluable to the collector, as furnishing the proper times of day to go in search of particular species; the two most favourite times appear to be morning and afternoon; clearwings seem to be the early birds, *Bombyses* the latest.

THE CHRYSALIS STATE.

See "The Insect-Hunter's Companion."

See "The Guide," p. 68.

In pupa digging, the spud, with handle about a foot long, figured opposite, will be found a very effective implement. The trowel in the figure below it is long, strong, and nearly flat. It is sold by most naturalists, and is a great advance on the old weapon with its curled up sides.

Management.

Lying over. It is important not to throw away chrysalids which have passed beyond the usual time for emergence: a great number of species are given to what is called "lying over." *E. lanestris* has been known to "lie over" as many as eight winters; *E. versicolora*, five; while *P. machaon*, *S. ligustri*, *S. tilia*, *C. vinula*, *N. carmelita* and *dromedarius*, the genus *Cucullia*, *A. alni*, many *Eupithecia*, *E. unangulata*, &c., not infrequently lie over two or more winters.

A. iris.

Forcing. Considerable improvement has been made in this process, by the use of a lamp (burning for 12 or 24 hours) by which an equable temperature of about 90° F. is maintained. It is carried out as shown in the annexed figure: A is a hot water soup plate, B a glass flower pot, C a tripod stand, D a suitable lamp, F the opening for filling or emptying the plate, and E a tray. *N.B.*—For A, a cake tin, under a soup plate, may be substituted, and for B a bell glass, but ventilation must be seen to.

For use: cover the bottom of the well of the soup plate with gravel, over this strew moss, upon which arrange the pupæ, and again place more moss over them, also a few twigs, for the insects to crawl up as they emerge. Then the hot water plate, or cake tin, has to be filled with water at 90°, the moss

has to be well sprinkled with warm water, the lamp lighted, and the parts placed in the position shown in the figure.—70.

In variety breeding. For retarding or accelerating the duration of the pupal condition, Mr. Merrifield uses an ice safe, or a Norwegian cooker with ice, for prolonging the chrysalis state; and an apparatus on the principle of the "Ekalobion," or incubator by which the temperature can be readily raised or lowered, for hurrying the appearance of the imago.*

In all emerging cages the sides should be covered with leno or some similar fabric, so that the insects can readily climb up to dry their wings. It is perhaps best to previously dig up and sort out such deeply pupating species as *T. populeti*, *N. hispidaria*, *P. commitata*, *C. spartiata*, *obliquaria*, and others, and lay them carefully between layers of moss in the emerging cage, before the time of the appearance of the perfect insect. Dr. Chapman somewhere states that change of temperature from warm to cold causes crippling, but that, if quickly brought back to the warm temperature, the process of development is resumed.

THE PERFECT STATE OR IMAGO.

Collecting.

Glass bottomed boxes are now almost universally used, and seem to have quite superseded the old glass topped ones, for, in addition to allowing you to examine the contents without opening, they are most useful for capturing insects on palings, tree-trunks, or in the net. By merely putting the box over the insect, its movements, generally towards the light, can be watched, till an opportunity occurs for slipping on the lid behind it. Those who consider these too expensive can buy the "purple shouldered" boxes and the discs of glass separately, and, if they have sufficient ingenuity, put them together themselves; or they may be content with a few glass bottomed boxes for special purposes, and the rest ordinary ones—or, again, they can use the pink pill-boxes of English make, varnished over with shellac dissolved in naphtha, which not only greatly strengthens, but renders them impervious to wet. Willow chip boxes, the inconveniences of which are mentioned at p. 12, have quite gone out of fashion.

The cyanide bottle is at the present time pretty generally adopted, but it should only be used to stupefy. The insect should then be killed by piercing its thorax with a fine grooved needle, or sewing machine needle, or steel pen with one nib broken off (106), dipped in strong solution of tobacco or nicotine, as used by gardeners. This is superior to oxalic acid (or vinegar, which is equally destructive to life), as acids are likely to injure the

*This subject, first suggested in the pages of "The Guide," has since become a very big question.

THE PERFECT STATE.

Smerinthus populi.

Eremobia ochroleuca

Lycana alexis.

Moths and Butterflies at rest.

colours of certain insects. Tell your chemist to put in plenty of the cyanide (B) when making the bottle (A), say two to four ounces, according to the size of the bottle, to put the poison in dry, and to let the Plaster of Paris (C), be of the consistence of a *thick* cream, so that it shall not be sloppy, and wet the cyanide. The bung (D) should be tight-fitting, and of close grained cork.

It has been suggested, to make a hollow stopper the receptacle for the poison, and no doubt the capacity of the bottle would be thereby greatly increased, but the danger of smashing, by the rapid contact of the two glass articles, would be very great. A scooped out bung would be better.

N.B.—If skittish species, such as the *Catocalæ*, are to be taken off the sugar, the bottle should be deeper, as well as wider mouthed, and even more cyanide should be employed than usual, for our success depends greatly upon its proper preparation.

Another use for the cyanide bottle is to procure the pairing of the *Zygenidæ*, which positively revel, and become amatory, in the atmosphere of the interior !

Chloroform, however, is still used by many, who believe that the cyanide injures the colour of certain species, “the wood white” for instance, and they previously prepare their pill-boxes for it, by letting into the lids very small eyelets. The neatest way of applying it is by means of a collapsible tube (with a scent sprinkler) filled with the fluid. When the screw stopper is removed, a touch (without squeezing) on the eyelet will soon quiet the inmate of the box. In the case of a big sphinx or bombyx a little may be squirted upon the tongue or spiracles, while in the net, with rapid effect. In taking the *Catocalæ* off the sugar, the plan is to clap a tumbler over them, slip a card, with a small hole in it, behind, and then push a match dipped in chloroform through the little hole. Stupefaction will speedily take place.

In beating, the tendency of moths is to drop in cold weather and bolt in hot ; it is as well to bear this in mind. Some moths take a long time to make up their minds to move ; in the early days of *E. venustula*, collectors used to what they called “rattle” for it. The operator, having thrust a walking-stick into a beech bush, would work it with both hands backwards and forwards, as if rowing, for perhaps a quarter of an hour or more, before starting an insect—rather hard work ! The lazy ones used to previously box a few *Scopariæ* and

Crambida, and when some one else had been hard at work “ruttling” for a certain time, an indolent collector would stroll up behind him, and let out a *Scoparia*, after which the energetic one would give chase, and he would then take possession of the bush. A great saving in labour that! But it is now found better to wait till their time of flight.

Butterflies in woods are best caught early in the morning, even 7 a.m., when females oviposit—*Iris* descends on hot days about 3 p.m. to puddles, ooze, wet mud, or sand, margins of streams and pools. The “skippers,” and almost all other butterflies when resting put their wings over their back, and most of them drop the first pair between the second, except

Th. tages, which rests with its wings arched roof-like over its back (see fig.), as discovered by Mr. Frohawk; *P. actæon* settles on a yellow thistle, in its

haunts; *L. arion* on thyme; *Th. W-album* on marjoram; *Th. quercus* on lime or oak; *pruni* on privet; *A. crategi*, *A. aglaia*, and the *Vanessæ* like thistles by day; *Latona* and *Colias* prefer lucerne and clover; *A. cardamines* affects *Crucifera*. The “Blues” go to sleep on grasses, &c., after their afternoon flight is over. See fig. A, p. 21 ante. There are three flights of *L. corydon*—1. in the morning when eggs are laid (after rest at night); 2. about 2 p.m. (those which emerged in the morning); 3. towards 4 p.m. when pairing takes place. Some butterflies, however, pair about mid-day. *N.B.*—In striking at a butterfly, if on the ground, strike downwards, their first impuls^o is to fly up, and their vision is not so good above, as around, and in front of them.

After their flight is over many species, in addition to those mentioned at p. 83, are to be found settled on their food plants and on grasses. *S. anomala*, *L. cespitis*, *H. hispida* (on the coast), *A. cinerea*, *P. leucophaea* (?) and *H. sylvanus* may be added to the list.

Northern insects are not always later than southern ones, species which have to feel the cold before emergence are often earlier in the north, just as ivy blooms in bleak, exposed situations, sooner than it does in the valleys.—79.

Assembling. I find that (at p. 88) I have been too sweeping in my assertion that probably all females attracted males—there are at any rate two exceptions to the rule; *Hepialus hectus* and *humuli*, and there may be more. In these, the peculiar oscillating flight of the male, accompanied by the diffusion of scent, which in *hectus* is said to resemble pine-apple, and in *humuli* to be like *Cossus* (the goat), only diluted so as to be not unpleasant, are the means of attracting the females. As friend Horace remarks: “*Rufus pastillos olet, Gorgonius hircum.*” By-and-by, my lady rudely blunders up against him, and settles a short distance off. Not till then does the male seek the female.

Other species possess their own particular odours. *P. rapæ* gives off the scent of verbena, *S. convoluli*, musk, and so on.

Posies of attractive flowers are of great use for alluring certain insects to convenient situations. Nosegays of honeysuckle, tied to a stick, stuck in the ground, will help to bring *C. porcellus* within our reach. In places where the sallows are difficult to work, big bunches or branches of bloom will in like manner assist the collector to capture the *Taniodampæ* (p. 90). And no doubt other favourite blossoms would similarly prove effective.

Decoying is a valuable method of collecting swift-flying butterflies which does not seem to have been much practised in this country. The *modus operandi* is to pin a fresh caught specimen of the species required in a convenient spot, such as on a conspicuous part of a bush in a good locality, and wait, net in hand, in a concealed position, for the arrival of visitors. A dried specimen, or even a piece of paper or other substance of the requisite colour and size frequently answers the purpose. In the absence of the living insect a mechanical decoy, as in figure 1 (side view) has been suggested and found effective.

A, the butterfly; B, upper part of frame to which it is attached; C, groove through which the bent spring D works; E, "water line" (as used for fishing) which depresses the spring; F, a "dresser hook" filed flat at top for the attachment of short bit of watch spring, G, which is "whipped" on by "wax end"; H, metal loop soldered on to F, through which the line, E, passes.

Fig. 2 shows the front view, the dotted lines indicating the action of the wings. The letters, excepting the lower D and G, refer to the parts corresponding to those in Fig. 1.

In Fig. 3 A is the upper part of the frame to which the wings are fixed, B being a piece of tape glued on, to form a hinge; D is the groove in which the body of the insect is fixed, the lower figures explain how bent pieces of card are glued together to form the body rest, the lower part E.F. (side view), or Fa (front view) resting on the short spring, on

the flat surface of the dresser hook, an opening being left at G for the working of the bent wing elevating spring; D, in the figure; C, shows how bits of card are glued together, to form the slot through which the bent spring passes.

The Indians of British Guinea proceed on somewhat different lines; they place the flowers of *Bignonia* under an open wicker-work basket (or "quake") by which many yellow species are secured, the butterflies which are attracted flying up into the "quake" on the approach of the operator. Similarly they are very successful in capturing the big blue *Morphos* by substituting the skins of bananas for the *Bignonia* flowers. A net contrived on the plan of the "ro-

bin trap" but larger, say two feet diameter, and manipulated by trigger and line from a distance, would no doubt be still more effective than the "quake."

Decoying ought to make the capture of swift flying *Nymphalidæ* a good deal easier than it is at present, and save a lot of unnecessary exertion.

Harnessing by means of a fine silken thread looped round the thorax, between the primary and secondary pairs of wings, at one end, and tethered to a plant by the other, in a suitable spot, has, I believe, been employed with success in the case of *Colias* and other butterflies.

The great majority of Tortrices are day flyers. Not only

such genera as *Stigmonota*, *Phlæodes*, *Semasia*, *Coccyx*, *Dichrorampha*, *Catoptria*, but many others. In nearly all the genera, there are a few day flyers, i.e. fly in broad daylight and hot sunshine—the hotter the better. Many of these are tree and shrub feeders, and fly over the topmost twigs of their food in search of females, or the latter to deposit ova. To capture those frequenting trees a big bag net is necessary, light but stiff, and three long bamboos, fitted with joints of strong copper, like a fishing rod.

Taking up our stand under a tall hedge, or beside pollard trees, we watch the insects flying over them, outlined against the sky, sometimes in swarms. Many species, formerly considered rarities, have, in this way, been taken in abundance. *A. upupana*, *E. obscurana*, *L. puncticostana*, for instance. From one o'clock till nearly dusk is the time, but many species begin to fly when others retire, and the game is well kept up till dusk puts an end to the sport.—81.

Talking of fishing rods reminds me that, years ago, we used this instrument for bringing down *Z. æsculi* from the ash trees in Euston Square, where they were out of our reach, and the locality was too public for a climb.

Sugaring twigs, &c. Mr. Holland gives some excellent hints about sugaring. He says that sugar, put on the branches and twigs of the trees they feed on, is more effective than on the trunks. If the trees are branched below, the branches only should be sugared. This is wonderfully successful for *Xanthia*. By sugaring below the tips of the outermost branches, all round the lime trees, fifty *X. citrargo* will be obtained to one on the trunk. For *X. aurago* the best place is outside a beech wood, beneath the ends of overhanging branches, or on twigs of a hedge below; for *X. gilvago* similarly, elms. Mr. H. objects to little except east or north-east winds, but admits that there may be other causes of failure, generally due to no broods having fed up on the spot. He considers it important to note the times at which they visit the sugar; thus *N. rhomboidea* keeps dropping in for hours, while with *X. aurago* the bulk will be taken the first and second round; but *gilvago*, though it comes fairly at first, drops off as it finished, but they are not: after about 9.30 they come in till midnight. *C. sponsa* and *promissa* come early, but they also come late. The compound Mr. H. uses is "Egyptian raw" (a date sugar), it is strong and dark and mixes with beer without boiling, he adds a drop or two of essence of pears—no rum, unless he cannot get the above sugar or "foots," and is compelled to use beet sugar.

Caution—aniseed. A well-known entomologist was actually convicted for night poaching by a local bumble, whom nothing would convince of his innocence. "This man was in a preserved wood, with a net in his hand, and a bottle, which had contained aniseed in his pocket—could anything be clearer? He *must* be a poacher," and as a poacher he was treated.

Sugaring meadows, mountain-sides, and other grassy situations, if done with judgment, often affords excellent sport. The counteracting effect of blossoms has been mentioned at p. 97 and elsewhere, but scarcely sufficient stress has been laid upon the peculiarly seductive power of grasses in bloom. If, on a calm evening, *after a showery afternoon* preceded by a spell of hot weather, sugar is spread on rags, hung like clothes upon a line, at intervals along a stout string, stretching at about a couple of feet from the earth, in the above named localities, or indeed in other suitable places, where there are no objects for the display of our sweets, numbers of moths may be obtained; the reason being that moths will have been attracted in swarms on previous nights, and will remain in the neighbourhood, while the recent rain will have washed away the pollen on which the counteracting scent depends. The same rule will apply to other blossoms; afternoon showers may therefore, be put down as favourable to sugaring. It may be noted here that in the west of England the flowers of the *Escallonia*, and at the sea side the Sea Marram, are the great enemies to success.

Respecting visitors at sugar. Mr. Fenn tells a good story which, as it points a double moral, I propose to retail to my readers. A couple of Londoners paid a visit to Rannoch. They were not very refined, if scientific, and their adjectives roused the indignation of their pious landlady, who lectured them severely just as they were starting, one Sunday evening, to sugar in the Black wood, some miles off. The night was still—uncannily so, and a creepy feeling of awe, or, to use their own expression, “funk,” stole over them; an idea seized upon the more timid of the two that someone was following them, but they continued to inspect the sugar, till at last one of them said to the other: “Bill, I can see eyes looking at us.” The other said: “Garn, they ain’t no one near us for miles, where did you see em’.” “Why there, and he’s got hor-hor-horns.” The landlady’s lecture flashed upon them; it was the—, well! “auld Cloutie.” With a yell they fled and did a record five-mile “sprint” home, leaving much of their property behind. On their arrival the good lady was shocked to see the poor, white-faced, trembling, breathless creatures, and asked what on earth was the matter. When informed, she said, as she closed her book, and wiped her glasses, “Hech sirs, nae doot it wis auld Hornie himsel’ an’ it sairs ye baith recht for breaking the Sawbath.” Fact is, it was just a “Hieland coo,” but the moral effect was quite as good as if it *had been* the—old one.

By tying leno round the trunk of an apple-tree which was riddled with *T. myopiforme*, I used, many years ago, to secure a goodly number of these clearwings.

The portable automaton moth trap was first introduced to British collectors in the pages of the “Guide” (103-4), but the

original arrangement of the glasses has been greatly improved upon by simply substituting two rectangular pieces (B.E. and C.F. in the top figure), placed above and below, at right angles, but not meeting by about an inch, thus leaving a long slot, the width of the trap, between E. and F.; this is Mr. Christy's. In Mr. Studd's the upper glass overhangs the lower one, and the latter has an acute return, H, which renders egress very difficult. Both are divided off from the lamp chamber, by a partition, A.D., which is transparent only in the middle, and opaque around. The interior is got at by means of little side doors. Certainly a considerable advance has been made in the above arrangement of the glasses, but, it seems to me, there is still room for further improvement.

About four years ago I rigged up a trap on the Christy principle. It rested on a platform, outside an attic window, overlooking the "Warren." It was lighted by two incandescent burners, and was whitewashed inside, and the insects streamed in along the searchlight-like beam and were rather too lively, but after a little while, the top (sheet iron) got so blazing hot, that, with my wife's dread of fire, I had to turn off the gas. I gave it a few trials, and satisfied myself that, after the light was put out, the inmates found their way to the ends of the slot, and walked out, so that in the morning the trap was empty. The fault of the old trap seems to be, that insects fluttering up the long glass, A.I. (p. 103), in the middle line, escape, while in the recent traps they get out at the corners of the slot. This, probably, would not occur if the drawer G, or rather the drawer M, with the stupefying drawer N (p. 103), were retained. The Americans, I believe, at the present day use a jar of cyanide, and some one has suggested a bag of laurel leaves, but I fancy the latter would be too bulky, and require too frequent renewal. What

I would suggest is, that the quadrilateral arrangement should be adapted to the long slot, by reducing the side pieces 3 and 4 to a minimum (see fig. front view). That the partition glass A D (in sectional view) be tilted a little forwards, and be made moveable, so that the glasses can be cleaned for use, through the back door, when the partition glass and lamp have been removed for the purpose. I see no use then for the side doors, if the stupefying drawer is retained. I would also fit the trap with a front door, constructed to swing back, on to the side of the trap, when in use, and to effectually close the entrance, *and exit*, as soon as the light is extinguished, and so quiet the inmates.

Attracting by light in the fens. Dr. Wheeler thus graphically describes (in E.M.M.) the perfection of a night for light in the fens, *i.e.*, “It was oppressively close, and the sky black, with clouds from which thunder, and, at intervals, a drop or two of rain, descended. . . . Standing beneath the lamp, its rays made a circle of light amidst the surrounding blackness, and this circle was apparently closed in with a hovering cloud of moths. I am sure I do not exaggerate when I say they were in tens of thousands; to select, under such circumstances, was impossible, and every dash of the net, among the swarms that from time to time came close up to the light, produced a mingled assemblage of captures, that made boxing a difficult matter, for often two or three would crowd into the pill box. Sometimes this was varied by a sudden bang of *M. arundinis* against the glass, followed by a buzzing, as it fell among the grass and rushes, or the noisy dashing about of *G. quercifolia*; but the *tout ensemble* produced an impression, the very recollection of which calls up a thrill of excitement.” . . . he goes on to say, “The apparatus which I now use (1877) is simply a square case, glazed all round (two opposite sides opening as doors), say 1 foot square and 14 inches high, with a wooden bottom, and a wire gauze top, and cylinder of tin fitted up in the middle, through which I can pass a pole to hoist it. This carries four meteor paraffin burners and will show a splendid light for an oil lamp.”

Among his most numerous captures in the fens of Norfolk and Cambridgeshire, he mentions such plums as *N. canna*, and *brevilinea*, *M. arundinis*, *N. citialis*, *B. uliginosana*, and many other good things.

For travelling he uses a smaller apparatus with two lamps, which will take to pieces, and pack up. With this strapped on his back for a cycle ride, or carried as luggage by train, he has worked other localities than fens, such as a large wood near Norwich, where he obtained *A. alni*; and the summit of a

Perthshire mountain, where *P. alpina* was captured, and he feels sure that such rarities as *G. ilicifolia* would come to it if tried on Cannoch Chase, or *Maiopea salicalis* in the Surrey Woods.

The pole of Dr. Wheeler's apparatus is ten feet high. He does not use a sheet, and the moths fly all round; a smaller lamp is placed at the foot of the pole, because so many species, micros for instance, keep down among the herbage, and get into the shadow. The Wickenfen collectors throw their light on to a sheet, and in order to diffuse the light still more, hang it up in the shape of an angle.

Lord Walsingham has a most ingenious contrivance; it is a square frame of four sides of perpendicular sheeting open at the top, with a powerful lamp in the middle, and there is room to stand *inside* the square if necessary, for so many moths settle on the inner sides. This is very effective.

As for the electric light, the effect is so irresistible that it threatens to exterminate the moth tribe in some localities. The electrician of the Elswick works, on a recent lecture on the searchlights of warships, said that, in the Egyptian war, the vessels were two miles from shore, but that "*millions of winged insects were attracted by the beam of light, and travelled along it until they struck the glass in front of the projector, and fell into the well around the searchlight, where they accumulated, in a seething mass, two feet deep.*" So that there is nothing "problematical" about the lighthouse keeper sweeping the moths off his glasses with a broom.—102.

The magnesium light too has been used by Mr. Thornthwaite with "startling success," also acetylene.

The lighthouses erected by the late Charles Tester of Tilgate Forest were very successful. They were merely built up of turf, and lined with white calico, with a lamp in front, just inside the door. Sitting on a bench, and armed with a net, the moths were either caught, or left to settle on the calico; *carmelita* and *bicuspis* were not uncommon visitors, and *dictæoides* was often abundant.

Touching dead animals. A Canadian gentleman tells us how, one hot summer, he noticed numerous butterflies settled on the ooze of a fallen stream, which was not a very convenient place to hunt them, and he thought it would not be a bad idea to take up a lot of water to a much nicer position close by; in this, as he anticipated, he was quite successful, and he was very pleased at the bag he made. He tried watering other places but always failed, so that he constantly returned to his original pitch. The "boss" of a railway in progress in the neighbourhood used to come and chat with him, and took great interest in his doings. One day our friend was explaining to the "boss" how curious it was that the water failed to attract the butterflies anywhere else but in that one spot. "Wal neow" (said the boss), "that du seem strange, don't it, and I buried a mule right there last fall."

Fumigating apparatus. Lancashire collectors have a very simple smoke dodge. It can be thus made: take a Colman's mustard tin, and perforate the sides of it freely, make a hole in the bottom by cutting a cross, and turning up (outside) the four corners, then firmly bind these corners to the ferrule end of a walking stick, by means of wires (see fig.) The fumigating material, such as touch-paper, tinder, touchwood, brown paper, fungus, rags, tobacco, &c., can be inserted, and ignited in the box, and the lid, which had been removed for the purpose, replaced. This apparatus, thrust into a bush, will hurry up the moths in a surprising manner, but see that the lid fits tightly. It is much safer than throwing lighted fuses into the bushes, whereby it is whispered that the best haunt of *circellata* was burned out.

The Bingham smoke bellows, too, as employed by bee masters, is also very useful for the purpose, and is a favourite with many southern collectors—see fig. It should be provided with a long tube to reach well into the bushes or whatever else is to be fumigated. To prevent the fire from going out, when not in use set "the smoker" down on end.—25, 85.

N.B.—Fumigate dry ditches in fens.

Observation.

The natural positions of moths at rest ought to be very carefully noted. It would be very instructive to set specimens of each species exactly in their natural attitudes. How often does it happen that a collector

who is perfectly familiar with the appearance of a particular insect in the cabinet, fails to recognise it when he first meets with it in Nature. With his mental vision of the dried specimen, he has probably hunted for something very different. Look

at these three *Pyralidina* (all of the same group), how different they are! On the left a *Pyralid* (*Botys*), on the right a *Deltoid* (*Hypena*), with *Stenopteryx*,

(now called *Nemophila*) in the middle. How differently each carries its wings, its legs, its antennæ ! What characters to separate one from the other !? The reader will find (at p. 21 ante) the natural attitudes of *Smerinthus populi* (the poplar Hawk) of *Eremobia ochroleuca* in its favourite situation on the flower of the Knapweed, besides the "little Blues," already referred to, as well as *Th. tages* at p. 23 ante.

The figure C opposite shows the natural position of *D. lacertinaria* on the underside of a birch leaf.

For denuding the wings of Lepidoptera of scales, in order to examine the neurulation, "*Eau de Javelle*" (hyperchlorite of potassa) is used. The wings are first wetted in spirits of wine, and drained but not dried, and then placed in the "*Eau de J.*," from which they are floated out. The peroxide of hydrogen (Golden hair wash) is also used for the purpose. It is less rapid than the first mentioned agent, and probably acts upon the pigment, rendering it transparent.

Preservation.

Concerning pins a few words are necessary. At the time the "Guide" was written, there was only one maker of entomological pins, Edelston & Williams—now Taylor, and the sizes (in numerals) and their application to insects, then given (p. 109), is correct at the present day ; but if you prefer to use Kirby, Beard & Co.'s make, you must ask for a number one less than those given, in order to obtain a pin of similar dimensions ; thus No. 10 Taylor = No. 9 Kirby, No. 20 Taylor = No. 19 Kirby, and so on with the other sizes.

White and gilt pins were formerly used, but now it is the fashion to use black pins ; unfortunately, in the enamelling process, heat is applied, and the metal is thereby softened, so that the points bend upon the slightest provocation, often to the ruin of a valuable specimen.

Pin-blackening has therefore been suggested and is carried out with the greatest ease and expedition—the only objection being the offensive odour of the agent employed. All that is necessary is to place the white pins, as purchased, into a glass vessel, and cover them with solution of *Sulphide of Ammonium* for one or two minutes, then pour off the liquor, and distribute the pins over an old newspaper, leaving them out in the air to dry ; if the sun be shining, so much the better, they will blacken and be sweetened the more quickly. Pins thus treated possess the following advantages : the metal, and especially at the points, is much hardened ; their dull dead black

colour does not attract the eye from the specimen, and the stable salt of sulphide of copper, with which they are now coated, is better able to resist the action of acids (even of butyric acid, in vapour), than any other pin. These have now been in use for several years, and those who have employed them are greatly pleased with the result.—109.

In setting out our captures, it is necessary to bear in mind that the saddles must be selected of a size, and particularly in the width of the body groove, suited to the

specimens upon which we have to operate, and the insects themselves must be in a thoroughly relaxed condition, if we want to perform the operation neatly and without difficulty.

Setting, by means of braces, is now rarely employed, except by old hands, who have become habituated to it. The usual mode of proceeding in the present day is to begin, as in the old method, by getting the legs and wings into position by means of a setting needle, which, when straight, is used to lever the wings into position, and when bent at the tip, to draw the wings to the required level, by hooking the *costæ* underneath.

Simultaneously, the bristle with the point of the pin resting on the cork, and the forefinger of the other hand on the head of the pin (A), pressure is applied to the wings, to keep them in

position, by advancing the finger from A towards B, and, at the same time, pressing the point of the pin more deeply into the cork. So that when

the finger is at B the pressure is at its greatest. The bristle is generally applied about the middle of the wings. While the wings are thus held in place,

a square piece of tracing paper sufficient to cover the wings, of one side, is stretched tightly over the shoulder, close to the margin of the body groove of the saddle, and fixed by two pins, one in front of the specimen, the other behind; the bristle is now removed and the tracing paper smoothed over the wing, and held there by pins. My friend, Mr. Fenn's plan, (see fig.), differs slightly from the foregoing, he uses cut quill, instead of the cats' whisker, which he applies to the shoulder, and covers only the portion of the wings beyond the quill (or "spanner.")

When the other side of the insect has been similarly treated, the saddle should be placed on end, in an upright position, so that the bodies may hang perpendicularly downwards, in order that they may dry in a good position and on the same plane as the rest of the specimen, thus obviating the use of body-rests to keep the abdomina up, braces to keep them down, or cross pins to keep them straight laterally.

Rapid setting, as explained in the two marginal figures, is useful when a large number of insects, of about the same size, require to be operated upon, and time is short. That on the right is carried out by means of strips

of tracing paper, or tracing cloth, stretched tightly over the wings and held in place by one or two pins, between each of the specimens. The other on the left, a remnant of the old fashion of brace-setting, is more particularly serviceable when captures are small, numerous, and of uniform size, and saddle room and time, are limited. It will be observed that the heel of each succeeding brace clips the tip of that which preceded it, thus considerably adding to the firmness of its hold. Of course, in neither case do we dispense with the preliminary manipulation of the setting-needle and bristle.

N. B.—Before using the tracing paper or cloth a second time, the pin holes, and especially the everted ones of exit, must be smoothed, otherwise injury may be done. It may be well to note here that under "Northern Setting," p. 115, I have said that "thread" is used. Some have taken this to mean "carpet thread," but the kind meant comes off the shuttle, as soft as the silk of *Bombyx mori*.

The present style of setting, though not nearly so high, or so flat, as Continental, is a little flatter and higher than it used to be. This necessitates the saddles being made less rounded, and the pins longer. No doubt pins suited to the requirements of the case will be forthcoming. It will be found that "cork carpet" (the thickest kind made by the Linoleum Company), is a better material for setting boards than cork; it is more uniform in substance, affords no hiding-places for *Anthreni*, and, having no holes or hard points, is easily workable, and can be quickly brushed over, occasionally as required with solutions of Carbolic Acid (one in forty), or Arseniate of Soda (8 grs. to the ounce), or Bichloride of Mercury (5 grs. to the ounce), to protect it against vermin. NOTE.—Our store boxes, and even drawers, may be treated in the same precautionary way.

The height of the specimen on the pin, sufficient to keep all parts from touching the drawer, is neatly carried out by means of Dr. Searancke's arrangement, as shown in the figure. It consists in a series of rests, formed

of tin, bent, and fixed to a board in such a manner that each presents a groove, for the reception of the body of an insect. The point of the pin is then passed through a perforation in the rest, and pushed down perpendicularly until it

touches the board, thus enabling us to secure uniformity of length of pin below the specimen. The rests are numbered with the distances from perforation to the board.

Lions' and Tigers' whiskers, when they can be obtained, make excellent setting bristles, the thin third for small things, the thick two-thirds for medium sized insects, while for large ones, the ribs of a small salmon, the concave sides of which have been carefully smoothed, are as neat and effective as anything. The pin suited for the purpose is a glass-headed steel toilet pin, and, for comfort, it is better to encase the upper portion of it in cork, fastened by varnish, which gives a firm and agreeable hold for the fingers.—114.

For pinning micros a watchmaker's eyeglass is invaluable, very small ones may be laid on velvet, which is better than blotting-paper for the purpose, ordinary micros should be rested between the forefinger and thumb of the left hand, while the right hand is used to pierce the thorax. N.B.—If the wings cannot be got over the back, use the blade of a clean penknife flat-wise.—108.

Relaxing. Carbolic acid (about 15 drops of No. 2 to the pint of damp sand), or "Formalin" (10 %), are used to counteract the putrifying and mould producing effects of aqueous vapour. Naphthalin (in India) in the collecting box has the effects of preventing the stiffening of captures for a considerable time. But Mr. A. J. Clarke's discovery of the properties of pure Wood Naphtha is a most interesting contribution to practical entomology. To relax an insect, by this agent, a camel's hair brush of suitable size is dipped into the Naphtha, and applied to the thorax, until the damp stain spreads about half over the wing, but not to the fringes. If this is kept up for three minutes, the insect may be pinned on to the setting board, the legs got into position and the wings braced down. In an hour or so the operation is complete, and the specimen is dry and set, and there seems but little tendency "to spring." It is invaluable for setting butterflies received in papers.

Mould is perhaps the most obstinate enemy with which collectors, under certain conditions, have to contend. In damp localities, by the seaside, and above all in countries where "monsoons" occur—where you take off your boots at night, and find them covered with "mushrooms" in the morning—the entomologist is at his wit's end to know how to preserve his treasures from destruction.

Dr. Sharpe's suggestion of a small piece of sponge, pinned into the cabinet drawers or storeboxes, and occasionally damped by means of a pipette with carbolic acid (Culvert No. 2), seemed to be the best preventive, till Formalin came up. I see no reason why Formalin should not be applied in the same manner, fifteen or twenty drops on the sponge. Mr. Gilles, who has

adopted this method says that two or three applications a year are sufficient. Formalin must be used cautiously where there are green insects. The vapour is rather irritating to the mucous membrane of the eyes and air passages, and should therefore be not too freely inhaled; but in a mild way, its effect is rather beneficial than otherwise, to those who suffer from catarrh of those surfaces. See also p. 17 ante.

After resetting it is usual to touch the shoulders, underneath, with a cement to prevent springing. Gum, French cold glue, and isinglass dissolved in acetic acid, are all more or less affected by damp and warmth, but sanderach in chloroform is not affected by moisture; though beware of subjecting insects, so treated, to the action of ether.

Mites and anthreni. As a preventive against the attacks of these destructive pests, there seems to be nothing better than naphthalin, or its commercial form, albocarbon. It may be put in the cells, originally made to hold camphor, or it may be stuck in our drawers, or store-boxes, in the shape of *boules* (see fig.) or balls, as sold by French naturalists. These are easily made by fine-drilling the spherical pieces of albocarbon, passing a glass-headed toilet pin through the hole thus made, and preventing the albocarbon from slipping down, as evaporation takes place, by a punched-out disc of card run up the pin to the lower end of the sphere, and held there by a dab of varnish. But where these vermin have actually got into a collection, it is best to put a water-colour paint pan, containing benzine, or bisulphide of carbon, into the cabinet drawer, and to keep it supplied until all chance of the appearance of fresh broods has passed away. N.B.—If, by overdoing the albocarbon, we appear to have injured any of the specimens, they should be subjected to a current of dry and slightly warmed air for a time. Mr. Sydney Webb uses lavender, and says that it is equally effective with naphthalin, pleasanter, and lasts four years, whereas the latter requires frequent renewal.

Removal of Grease is best effected by repeated soakings in the manner indicated in the first eight lines of the paragraph devoted to the subject at p. 118. But ether and chloroform are still more powerful grease solvents; ether being even more inflammable than benzine, or naphtha, while chloroform, the most powerful grease solvent we have, is as unburnable as water, you can boil it away in the middle of a flame, but it won't catch fire. Ether, however, being the quickest evaporant of all, leaves the brightest result. Methylated ether or chloroform answer just as well as the pure article, and are of course much cheaper. The former requires a very perfectly-fitting, wide-mouthed, stoppered bottle.

Some people freshen up the appearance of old specimens by spraying them with chloride of ethyl, in a little apparatus which works by the mere warmth of the hand. N.B.—There is no necessity to break off the abdomina for separate treatment, by so doing shrinkage, and a consequent misfit, often occurs; nor need the specimen be eviscerated.—118.

Postal boxes, like the square one figured at p. 110, but without the outer padding, are now used. When the specimens sent are very fragile, a light box, such as used for seidlitz powders, but corked, may be suspended between two elastic bands (B, C and A, D in the fig.), in a larger and stronger box, say a cigar-box (A in the lower figure) where B represents the inner box, and C the bands, between which it is held, and prevented from slipping sidewise by a piece of elastic surrounding the box and bands. The bands must not be too stout or too tightly stretched, and care must be taken that the indiarubber has not perished. Such a box, if judiciously managed, will stand almost any amount of knocking about and jarring, without injury to the contents.—110.

In sending butterflies home from the tropics, it is best to put them with their wings over their backs, into triangular paper envelopes, of which a large number may be packed in a strongish box, the line of closure being pasted over with paper, to keep out ants and other enemies. On their arrival, the insects are easily relaxed (and set) by means of wood naphtha (see p. 36 ante).

“Body-boxing” is a dodge, used by Mr. Sydney Webb, for preventing the bodies of specimens from rolling about in the postal boxes, it is carried out by cutting a piece of writing paper or thin card in the shape of the upper figure, and then bending it, at the dotted lines, to form the figure below. It is then pierced with a pin which, when the “box” is in proper position, holds all safe. It cannot get entangled with the legs as does wool.

For re-papering drawers, or papering saddles (for those few who *do* paper them) the best material is "lining paper" such as used by paper hangers, it is well first to brush over the cork with an aqueous solution of arseniate of soda (about 8 grains to the ounce), and then two coats of size before proceeding to work.—121.

Names of localities for the cabinet, may be specially printed, or cut out of railway guides; from the same source pointers (❧) for calling attention to particular specimens, may be obtained.

Glass bottoms to cabinet drawers, are required for certain purposes, as when frequent examination of the undersides is made. Mr. Merrifield uses them for exhibiting the upper and under sides of his wonderful series of thermic varieties. When made upon this principle, the drawers should be placed, for inspection, on a piece of white paper, or cardboard, in order to display the contents. They necessitate a method of pinning different from the ordinary. For this purpose, narrow metal troughs, containing strips of cork, stretch at suitable intervals, from top to bottom of the drawer.

The following notes are contributed by Mr. South :—

Classification and Arrangement.

In arranging his specimens in boxes or cabinet drawers, the collector will of course desire that the sequence of the species should be in accordance with some kind of system. He will therefore have to provide himself with a printed label list. If his aim is simply to form a collection of the moths and butterflies of his native country, there will not be great difficulty in obtaining a suitable list for the purpose, as this may be purchased of any one of the professional naturalists who supply entomological requisites. Should he, however, have a higher ambition and wish to study the objects that he may acquire, he will find it necessary to name and arrange his collection so that it may be in agreement with the nomenclature and classification of the generally accepted text books on the subject.

At the present time there is considerable difference of opinion among our most eminent entomologists in the matter of systematic arrangement, and also as regards the actual names of the species themselves. Several works on Lepidoptera, some dealing chiefly or entirely with British species, have been published during the last few years. All of these are of first class importance, but the systems upon which they are based are somewhat dissimilar, and for this reason it does not seem advisable to arrange one's collection on the lines of either.

The only matter upon which modern authorities seem to be in unison, is that an arrangement of Lepidoptera should be formed on a phylogenetic basis, that is that the origin and lines of development of the various families and sub-families, into which the order is divided, should be traced. In thus seeking for a natural classification some authors have been guided by the results of their examination of structural characters in the perfect insect, as for example the neururation of the wing (III). Others establish their conclusion on the formation of ova (IO), larvæ, and pupæ.

A very perplexing aspect of the teachings of what may be termed the new school of entomology is the antagonistic views held by the masters touching the subject of genera. One insists on slight differences of structure being of generic value, whilst another regards these same characters as unimportant. These differences of opinion oblige the student to accept or reject genera according to his own judgment after he has duly studied the teaching of both schools.

There is no doubt that as time goes on there will be a necessity for considerable modification of our lists, whether for labelling collections or for reference, but there certainly is no reason for altering these at present, or indeed in the very near future.

Rearers of Lepidoptera may assist in the elucidation of scientific problems. Most collectors of Lepidoptera endeavour to make themselves acquainted with the earlier stages of the species occurring in their own district, and many are not satisfied with anything less than personally ascertained knowledge of the life histories of all the species, so far as this is practical, included in their collections. The rearing of moths and butterflies from the egg is not only an exceedingly interesting and instructive pursuit but it enables those who engage in it to secure specimens that are in absolutely perfect condition. Furthermore when the "breeding" arrangements are conducted on a large scale, a far larger number of specimens are obtained than the operator is likely to require for his own collection, and he consequently secures a quantity of desirable material that will be useful should he wish to enter into negotiations with other collectors for the purpose of transacting business on the mutual help principle known as "exchange."

Although increasing and improving the collections are perhaps the main objects in view with those who rear Lepidoptera, there are many other ways in which the breeder can utilise the results of his undertakings. For example, when rearing from the egg he can, if he will trouble himself to do so, often obtain valuable data bearing upon the subject of hereditary influence. For this purpose he will require to carefully preserve the female parent, or better still where they are known both parents. He should then note down in what degree and in what proportion the offspring favour the parents in the matters

of colours and markings. It may be said that with a very large number of species there is not much scope for such observations, and it must be admitted that, in a general way, this is so. As a fact, however, no two specimens of any species, even of those considered to be the most constant, are quite alike in every detail. The difference between individuals may be exceedingly minute and escape detection unless the specimens are examined with a critical eye. To the beginner in this line of investigation a good number of species, fortunately mostly common, offer excellent material for him to exercise his powers of observation and discrimination. Such a species as *Acidalia aversata* for example would be a capital subject to deal with as a commencement. Suppose that ova are obtained from a female of the typical banded form, and also from a female of the plain form, two interesting stocks would be available for a series of experiments with future broods from well-matched parents and from variously assorted couples.

Another line of enquiry that might be undertaken by the "breeder" in the crossing of nearly allied species. It is perhaps well known that offspring have been obtained from pairings of *S. merinthus populi* with *S. ocellatus*. The individuals resulting from these communions are known as hybrids. Possibly anyone possessing a fair amount of patience with a corresponding proportion of determination of purpose might obtain hybrids from almost any two closely allied species. The plan which seems to offer the best chance of success in this kind of experiment is to have the cages containing the pupæ of each species placed closely side by side. When the specimens emerge the females of each should be changed from one cage to the other, so that, supposing *Spilosoma lubricipeda* and *S. menthastri* were the subjects experimented upon, we should have as the imagos come forth from the pupæ *lubricipeda* male and *menthastri* female in one cage, and *menthastri* male and *lubircipeda* female in the other cage.

END OF APPENDIX.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS IN THE APPENDIX

Vanessa Antiopa (Frontispiece)			
Egg of <i>H. hyperanthus</i> (Sepp)	. . .	4	
" <i>C. nupta</i> (do.)	. . .	4	
" <i>C. fraxini</i> (do.)	. . .	4	
" <i>O. sambucaria</i> (do.)	. . .	5	
Larva <i>Ph. smaragdaria</i> (Victor Prout)	. . .	6	
" <i>Ph. bajularia</i> (do.)	. . .	6	
" Collecting Box	. . .	7	
" Ditto, with funnel (C. Fenn)	. . .	8	
" <i>O. fascelina</i> (Kirby & Spence)	. . .	8	
Saw for stump cutting	. . .	9	
Larva of <i>D. vinula</i> (K. & S.)	. . .	10	
Courtice's breeding cage	. . .	10	
A dark chamber	. . .	11	
Protector against frass	. . .	12	
Larva of <i>N. ziczac</i> (K. & S.)	. . .	13	
" <i>S. fagi</i> (do.)	. . .	14	
Larva preserving apparatus	. . .	16	
Auld's larva skin holder	. . .	17	
Pupa digging adventure (Victor Prout)	. . .	18	
Another ditto (do.)	. . .	18	
Spud for pupa digging	. . .	19	
Trowel for ditto	. . .	19	
Pupa of <i>A. iris</i>	. . .	19	
Forcing apparatus	. . .	19	
<i>S. populi</i> at rest (Frohawk)	. . .	21	
<i>E. ochroleuca</i> at rest (Frohawk)	. . .	21	
Blues at rest (Frohawk)	. . .	21	
Cyanide bottle	. . .	22	
" stopper	. . .	22	
<i>Th. tages</i> at rest (Frohawk)	. . .	23	
Mechanical decoy (side)	. . .	24	
" " (front)	. . .	25	
" " (from above)	. . .	25	
Moth trap, Christy's	. . .	28	
" " Studd's (improved)	. . .	28	
" " front (improved)	. . .	29	
Fumigating apparatus	. . .	31	
" " . . .	. . .	31	
Botys at rest (Guenée)	. . .	31	
Stenopteryx at rest (do.)	. . .	31	
Deltoid at rest (do.)	. . .	31	
<i>D. lacertinaria</i> (Frohawk)	. . .	32	
Setting bristle (G. M. Hare)	. . .	33	
Setting (C. Fenn)	. . .	33	
Quick Setting	. . .	34	
" " . . .	. . .	34	
Pin regulator (Searancke)	. . .	35	
Carbolic sponge	. . .	36	
Naphthalin boule	. . .	37	
Postal Box	. . .	38	
" " section	. . .	38	
Body box, pattern	. . .	38	
" " complete	. . .	39	

INDEX TO THE APPENDIX

EGG	4-5	Duration	5
Appearances	7	Laying	5
<hr/>			
CATERPILLAR	1-17	Indications	8
Bignell tray	8	Larvæ Bryophidæ	15
Breeding cage	10	„ Notodontidæ	14
„ house	10	„ Psychidæ	14
Butterfly larvæ	7	„ Tortrices	15
Cannibals	7	Management	10
Clearwing larvæ	9	Preserving	16
Collecting boxes	8	Pupating above ground	11
„ tins	7	„ „ under ground	12
Feeling	10	Sleeving	12
Fern pan	10	Substitute foods	13
Galleridæ	9	Ticketing	12
Hibernating	12	Water bath and drink	13
<hr/>			
CHRYSLIS	17-20	Lying over	19
Emerging cages	20	Pupa digging	19
Feeling	17	Variety breeding	20
Forcing	19	<hr/>	
PERFECT INSECT	20-41	Mites	37
Arrangement	40	Mould	36
Assembling	23	Natural positions	36
Beating	22	Observation	31
Body-boxing	38	Pin-Blackening	32
Boxes	20	Pinning	35
Butterflies	23	Portable moth trap	28
Chloroform	22	Posies	24
Concerning pins	32	Post boxes	38
Cyanide bottles	22	Rapid setting	34
Dead Animals	30	Relaxing	36
Decoying	24	Repaparing	39
Denuding wings	32	Resetting	37
Fumigating	31	Setting	33
Glass bottom drawers	40	Setting bristle	33
Grease	37	Sugaring meadows	27
Lighthouses	30	Sugaring twigs	26
Light in the fens	29	Tortrices	25

The Lepidopterist's Guide.

THE EGG STATE.

"Ev'ry insect of each different kind,
In its own egg, cheer'd by the solar rays,
Organs involv'd, and latent life displays."

BLACKMORE.

Collecting.

Egg hunting is a pursuit which, from difficulties due to the small size of the objects, and the consummate skill with which they are frequently concealed, has hitherto scarcely met with that amount of attention which the subject deserves. While confessing, on the one hand, that the eggs of insects are certainly comparatively difficult to find, not only for the above reasons, but also from the facts that they obviously leave no tracks, as larvæ do, and that being, as a rule, firmly attached, they are not to be shaken or beaten from their positions; yet, on the other hand, it cannot be doubted that continued observation as to the situations in which eggs are deposited, the time during which the different species remain in the egg state, together with their appearances, disposition, and mode of concealment, would furnish results valuable alike to the collector, to the observer of Nature's works, and to Science itself; and it must be admitted that the egg-hunter would sometimes stumble upon batches of numbers such as he could never hope to meet with in the other stages of insect existence, and that too of living embryo individuals hardly ever affected by parasites, unlikely to sicken from change of food and air, and not liable to droop and die from having received an unfortunate knock with the beating stick, or an unlucky dig with the trowel; besides, the fact that eggs *do* exist in almost infinitely greater numbers than larvæ, pupæ, or imagos, ought to stimulate us to overcome the difficulty.

The situations in which eggs are deposited, are naturally either upon or in the neighbourhood of the food of the future larvæ, and almost always in such localities as are adapted to the well-being of the species; though occasionally, by accident, as in the instance of females attracted to light, which have been known to deposit on the bars of the lamp, eggs have been found in such situations as cannot possibly afford a chance to the future larva.

A known or likely locality—that is, one which, having the required food, has a similar soil, altitude, temperature, amount of moisture or dryness, shelter or openness, to one which the insect looked for is known to inhabit—must first be selected as a spot for commencing operations. The collector will rarely stand a chance of finding, upon a gravelly soil, a species which is attached to the chalk or limestone, or a mountain species in the valley, or a heat-loving species in a bleak locality, a fen insect on high and dry ground, or an inhabitant of a dense wood upon the open moors, &c. The more common positions of eggs are upon the surface and in the chinks of bark (often, unfortunately, high up on the trunk and branches), on the twigs, buds, leaves, flowers, and seeds, of various trees and plants; sometimes on neighbouring objects, as on palings, walls, rocks, stones, clods; at others, among refuse vegetable and animal matters; now and then, loosely scattered upon the ground, or fixed to aquatic plants beneath the surface of the water; while, in some special cases, the nests of ants, wasps, and bees, are the situations chosen by the parent female.

The time during which the different species remain in the egg state would very materially assist the collector, but little on this question has been chronicled; however, I think that, with few exceptions, the following may be adopted as rules:—

Eggs deposited in early spring may be expected to hatch at about the time when the buds of the respective food-plants are ready to burst forth into leaf. We should therefore make search for these before the buds expand.

Eggs laid in spring and early summer usually hatch in a fortnight or three weeks, the species feeding up and passing the winter in the chrysalis state.

Eggs deposited late in the summer and early autumn months, in two or three weeks, produce larvæ which feed up more or less slowly, and frequently hibernate.

Eggs deposited in the latter months of the year do not usually hatch until the following spring.

It may here be well to mention a few exceptional cases, namely, *double-brooded species*, of which there are two groups, “spring and summer brooded,” and “summer and autumn brooded;” the eggs of both broods of the former group hatch quickly (in 10 days or less), the larvæ feeding up and changing to pupæ, in which state the winter is passed; the eggs of the first batch of the second group do so likewise, but those of the last batch either do not hatch till spring, or, hatching, the larvæ hibernate. Some eggs laid in summer, as, for instance, those of *Ciduria dotata*, *C.*

prunata, &c., do not hatch until the following spring. Other eggs sometimes exhibit the peculiarity of hatching at intervals; thus, those of *Ennomos fuscantaria* seem to hatch, at intervals of two or three days, from the end of May to the end of June. Another exception is that of *insects which hibernate in the perfect state*; these do not generally lay, or even pair, until the following spring.

Of course, it stands to reason that eggs of butterflies and moths are laid during some period of the lifetime of the parent female, and that, therefore, when a species has been on the wing for a time, or more surely, if it be getting over, it is time to begin to look for the eggs; but, whilst some species deposit even directly after copulation, others do not lay until a variable, sometimes very considerable, time afterwards.

The appearance of the eggs of the *Lepidoptera*, and the modes in which they are disposed and concealed, present highly interesting points, not only to the egg-hunter, but to every thoughtful observer. That the eye should become familiarised with the general aspect of these objects as they appear in Nature, is of the utmost importance to him who would successfully follow the pursuit of egg-hunting. Probably, most of us are acquainted with the appearance of the eggs of many species, as, for instance, with the conical ridged egg of *Pieris Brassicæ*, the ribbed, pumpkin-shaped eggs of *Vanessa urticæ*, deposited in little irregular masses on the under-sides of nettle leaves, the pointed egg of *Gonepteryx rhamni* placed singly upon the terminal shoots of buckthorn, the large, oval, green egg of *Smerinthus populi* deposited singly upon poplar leaves, the masses deposited by *Zygæna* and *Zenizera*, the latter in the chinks of oak bark, the fast-blackening globules of the female *Hepialus humuli* as she sows them broadcast, the pearly beads of the *Lithosidæ* and *Chelonidæ* neatly placed in batches (the beautiful egg of *A. villica* being iridescent like mother-of-pearl), the ringed egg of the Drinker Moth deposited on blades of grass, the batches of *C. neustria* and *E. lanestræ* arranged spirally around twigs and coated over with protecting varnish, those of the latter being still further protected by the fluffy down from the anal tuft of the female moth; the felted patches of the *Porthesiæ*, the colour-changing eggs of *Endromis* placed in small batches upon the twigs of birch, and of *Saturnia* on heather, bramble, and other plants; the somewhat cuplike-looking eggs of *Orgyia* coating the old cocoon of the nearly apterous female, the brown hemispherical egg of *Dicranura vinula*, and the black drops of its smaller congeners *bifida* and *furcula* firmly fixed by their bases in groups of twos and threes upon the upper-sides of the leaves of

willow and poplar, the pale drop-like eggs of the *Notodontidæ* sparsely scattered upon the leaves of their special food-plants, the ragged egg of *D. cæruleocephala*, the neatly-placed brick-shaped eggs of the genus *Ennomos*, the gourd-like eggs of *Selenia*, the small eggs of *Biston*, and those of *Boarmia* disposed of by the female in suitable chinks and crevices, the oval pearly eggs of *Melanthia* and *Cidaria* often so amazingly large when compared with the size of the parent moth, the scale-like egg of the *Tortrix*, and many others, which, when we come to know them well, will lead us to deduce analogies of the utmost assistance in previously forming an opinion as to where we shall be likely to find, and what-like will be the appearance of, the egg of any particular species of which we may be desirous of going in quest.

An examination of the anal segment of a female specimen would also afford us a means of making a fair guess at the situation and mode of concealment of its eggs. Thus—were she provided with a longish protruded ovipositor, as *Zenizera*, *Cossus*, *Boarmia*, the inference would be that the eggs would be found deposited deeply in the chinks of bark; should the abdomen be pointed with a concealed, or only slightly projecting, ovipositor, as in some of the *Cosmidæ* and *Dianthæciæ*, the *Hibernidæ*, *Eupitheciæ*, and other geometers, the probability would be that the species would deposit its eggs in flowers, or in the axils of leaves, buds, &c.; should the abdomen be blunt, the eggs may be looked for upon leaves, twigs, &c.; while, if the anal segment be tufted, the eggs will be found in patches, felted over with downy fur, generally upon the surface of bark and twigs.

The presence of the perfect insect, especially if a female have been noticed, should of course at once put us on the alert. By following the movements of the flying parent insect, as she flits about depositing an egg here and an egg there, we may literally *hunt* for eggs. Those of *Lycena Arion*, *Sesia chrysidiformis*, and of other good things were originally detected in this way.

In searching upon trees, bushes, &c., it is advisable carefully to scrutinize each leaf, foot stalk, and twig, from different aspects. This may be done by turning the branch, under examination, in such a manner as to get successive views of the upper and under-sides of leaves, and the circumference of the twigs. It is also a good plan to look at the branches against a rather strong light; and the use of a powerful reading glass will increase our chances in about a proportionate ratio to its magnifying powers. Whenever any unusual speck, spot, or patch arrests the attention, the collector must, of course, satisfy himself as to the cause of this. He will

generally find that the under-sides of the leaves are the most favoured positions, but some species, as the *Dicranuridæ*, select the upper surface. Eggs are most frequently placed near the midrib and towards the apex of the leaf. The eggs of some moths are deposited, in autumn, upon the axils of leaves, and remain there through the winter, as for example those of *O. lota* and *Tethea retusa*, and from this cause thousands of these species are destroyed by the basket makers, who cut down the “witheys” in winter. The eggs of other species are placed on buds, especially on terminal shoots, as in the case of *G. rhamni*. The species which subsist on flowers and seeds probably deposit at the base of the petals or soft ovary, or on the flower stalks of Umbelliferæ, &c., as the case may be. The eggs of internal grass feeders will usually be deposited in, or about, the axil of the sheath around the stem, while those of wood and bark feeding species will generally be placed in chinks of bark, though *Sesia bembeciformis* certainly deposits naturally upon the leaves. The eggs of low plant feeders may be most likely detected on the under-sides of the leaves of their food-plant, on adjacent stems of grasses, or on other plants or objects in the neighbourhood.

The following plan is a “moral,” and exemplifies with amazing force the trite injunction “*Don't kill the goose that lays the golden egg.*”

Allowing or inducing Lepidopterous females to lay in captivity, is a process well worthy of attention, and, since it has been adopted by energetic breeders, has well repaid the almost daily care which necessarily attends, and, follows it. Some species deposit freely enough, even when shut up in a pill-box, or impaled with a pin, requiring no inducement to the act; but many, unless properly managed, are apt to disappoint the collector's hopes in this respect. Among those which will be found to lay freely, I may mention the *Smerinthi*, some *Sesiæ*, the *Hepialidæ*, *Lithosidæ*, *Chelonidæ*, *Liparidæ*, *Bombycidæ* (indeed, most of the true *Bombyces*), *Coremia*, *Hibernia*, *Cidaria*, and many other *Geometræ*, *Dicranura*, *Clostera*, and several *Nontodontidæ*, *Acronycta*, *Xylophasia*, some of the *Tæniocampæ* and *Xanthiæ*, the genus *Pyrallis*, *Hydrocampa*, *Pterophorus*, &c.; others, on the contrary, require such inducements as space, admission of the sun's rays, nutriment, presence of food-plant, suitable cracks and surfaces in which and on which to deposit, and other conditions which may from time to time suggest themselves to the observant Entomologist.

NOTE.—It has been suggested that, for the purpose of placing the impregnated female under the conditions most favourable for laying,

should be confined, within a sleeve of lenco, on the food-plant. This will, of course, ensure the eggs being deposited in the best position for the future larvæ to commence feeding.

Butterflies, as a rule, require space, admission of the sun's rays, presence of the food-plant (especially of the flowers), free ventilation, &c., as incentives to laying; but some species, as *A. Galatea*, *A. Euphrosyne* and *Paphia*, *S. Aegeria* and *Hyperanthus*, *C. Pamphilus*, &c., will generally lay freely enough if the three latter conditions be complied with, but it is important that air should be admitted, for, otherwise the inmates will be killed by sunstroke. It is always advisable that some part of the cage should be shaded, in order that the insect may retire to it when so disposed.

Of Sphinges, the *Sesie* will frequently lay even after impalement, but *M. stellatarum*, which deposits its eggs while on the wing as it hovers, curling its abdomen forwards and upwards, so as to place the egg upon the under surface of the leaf of its food-plant, the bedstraw, would also require space for flight; and so too would some of the autumn species, such as *D. galii*, *C. Celerio*, and *S. convolvuli*, generally supposed to deposit naturally after hibernation, though the latter has been known to lay fertile eggs in September.

Bombyces generally lay pretty freely; when shut up in a pill-box, it is advisable to leave the lid a little on one side, so that the enclosed insect may not be stifled, or the top of the lid may be knocked out and gauze substituted for it, and kept in place by its rim. The tongued *Bombyces*, as the *Lithosidæ* and the Hook-tips, should be allowed to sip from a sponge moistened with honey and water; as to the species whose females naturally deposit eggs in bright sunshine, as the day-flying Hook-tips, sunbeams and air should of course have free admission.

Geometræ usually require nourishment, as *e. g.* that afforded by the damp sweetened sponge, and some seem particular as to the surface upon which they deposit, one apparently liking the deep chinks in rough bark or slits in a chip box, as *Nyssia*, *Biston*, *Boarmia*; another, as *Epione*, preferring a corner, such as that formed where the chip of the circumference of a willow box overlaps; a third, as *Cidaria*, depositing at the tips of any little projections from the surface; while a fourth does not appear satisfied unless she lays her eggs among some loose texture, as the folds of muslin, and the like.

Noctuæ more than all require the stimulus of the sweetened sponge, as they are a class of insects which are apt to delay oviposition until some-

times a very long period after impregnation, it not unfrequently happening that they die without depositing ova. In their case, as with the Geometers, we must first place the females in a suitable chamber, such as a child's toy box *loosely* lined with paper (for the subsequent easy removal of the eggs), and having a piece of gauze or leno substituted for the wooden top of the lid. The sweetened sponge may be pinned to the side of their cage, from which they will generally be found to sip freely; in order, however, to make sure of a female having her sense of taste excited, place the sponge in front of her palpi and then very gently blow towards her, when she will immediately unfold her tongue and partake of the nectar.

It must be borne in mind that the males of some species, as *Bombyx*, *Saturnia*, *Endromis*, fly by day in quest of their respective females, but that the females do not generally fly or deposit their eggs until the evening has set in; and I may just observe here that the introduction of a gas or lamp light into an apartment in which a female is depositing will, in most cases, stop the process, though in others this very means may be adopted as an incentive to lay. It has sometimes been noticed that females with which every inducement had failed, have laid freely enough, after having been treated with oxalic acid; and even the plan of actually squeezing out eggs from the body of a refractory female, appears to have met with, at any rate, partial success in more cases than one.

It might seem absurdly superfluous to say that females only should be selected for laying purposes, but the remark is necessary, for a young friend of mine once had the luck to capture a pair of "prominents" *in copulâ*, and whether or not visions of innumerable bred specimens, looming in the future, turned his head I cannot say, but certain it is that he rashly converted his lady moth into a specimen, and waited, with a patience worthy of a better cause, for the cock to lay. It is, however, by no means the easiest matter in the world, to make out the sexes of certain species; in most cases, the antennæ and the abdomen afford the required clue, but not in all: *ergo cave*.

Management.

Eggs should never be touched. When, however, for convenience, it is necessary to remove them, as when found in Nature, or deposited in awkward or insecure positions in our breeding or other cages and boxes, the operation must be conducted with great care; and it must be remembered that the eggs of several species, as those of *H. croceago*, *A. prodromaria*, and others, are very soft when first laid, and that, if the substance to which they are attached be even twisted or disturbed at this stage, they

will perish, but after a little time the shells harden, and they may then with caution be removed by carefully cutting out the substance to which they are fixed. As a precautionary measure it has already been suggested to line the laying boxes loosely with paper or gauze, for the purpose of cutting out the bits upon which eggs may be deposited. These, on removal, should be placed in glass-topped boxes, which serve to secure the future larva from escape, and yet allow the owner to watch progress without opening or even moving the box. Beyond keeping them thus at ordinary atmospheric temperatures, as in an outhouse sheltered from the rain and sun, and daily watching them, until such time as they hatch, no attention is necessary, unless in some rare instances it be advisable to damp them from time to time: with eggs which pass through the winter, the chief precaution is, not to forget them in the spring.

A natural state of dampness may be kept up in the following way—a growing pad of the velvety moss, which flourishes on old walls, is placed, together with the food-plant, in a flower pot; the eggs are then sprinkled over the moss, into which they sink, and therefore cannot shift about.

Should it be desirable to get three broods of a double-brooded species, the Entomologist may, as soon as the food-plant is coming into leaf, either “force” the imagos by bringing the pupæ into a warm room, and so get eggs before the natural time, or he may hasten the hatching of eggs by a similar increase of temperature.

Fertile and infertile eggs may be known by the changes which take place in their colour, density, shape, &c. The following may assist the egg possessor in a diagnosis:—If an egg, from having been yellow or orange, change colour to any of the tints of pink, rose, or red; from having been of a reddish colour to any hue of lavender, lilac, purple; or from white, drab, or cream-colour to any shade of brown or lead-colour; or from green to red or lurid purplish; or if an egg become black or uniformly darker; or if it become symmetrically marked, spotted, banded, or ringed, or flatten or change form without shrivelling, the chances are that it is fertile, and that the natural changes are going on in the enclosed larva. But if, on the other hand, the egg should show transparency at one point and opacity at another for any length of time, or should exceed its proper time of hatching, or should curl or collapse, it may almost certainly be considered either that the egg is unfertilised, or that the contents have perished; for though the soft eggs of some species do shrivel to a certain extent, even though perfectly impregnated, it is assuredly a bad omen. The above tests are, of course, inapplicable to eggs which, like those of the *Puss-moth*, have rigid, opaque, and coloured shells, but even here an adept will detect a difference between a fertile and infertile ovum.

It will, however, be best for the collector to keep his eggs until he is quite sure about them, one way or other; remembering that the ova of the same species may at one time hatch in the autumn, and at another may lie over until spring. Sometimes black specks make their appearance on the surface of eggs, especially upon the opaque white eggs of the *Prominents*,—these are due to the enclosed larva having bitten through the shell so that the mandibles have become apparent. When this happens, the larva may be expected speedily to come forth; but it has often been noticed that, from some cause, probably from insufficient power to escape, larvæ are exceedingly apt to die at this stage; damping with warm water, and placing in a warmer temperature, as a hot-bed, may be worth trial. I am, however, perfectly satisfied that the usual plan of placing the eggs on the food-plant at this period is often a fatal proceeding. On the whole, it is, perhaps, best to leave them to take their chance under the same circumstances in which they have been all along.

For transmitting eggs by post, two simple plans are generally adopted: the first, and best [see figure], is to punch, or cut out, a hole through a piece of wood (*aa*), mill-board, or other suitable substance, to fix a

piece of card (*c*) to one of the surfaces, thus forming a cavity or cell (*b*) into which the eggs may be placed; and to cover over with another piece of card, which may be kept in position by a few turns of thread; this package may then be safely sent through the post. The other plan, is to procure quills (the penny or threepenny bundles of toothpicks sold at bazaars answer admirably), and, having pared them off straightly at each extremity, to fit both ends accurately with wooden stoppers, one of which being removed, the eggs may be inserted, the stopper replaced, and the little package may then be sent off in a letter; if several of these quills are required to be forwarded at once, they should be enclosed in a brass pen box, a dozen of which may be purchased at a cheap rate (for about 1s. 6d. or 1s. 9d.) of most stationers. NOTE.—The advantage of using the wooden stoppers instead of wool, which is more generally employed for the purpose is twofold; the wood resists better the stamp of the post office, and is not liable to entangle the tiny prolegs of the larvæ, should the eggs hatch *in transitu*.

Observation.

The observation of the eggs of insects is a subject of far greater importance than Entomologists have yet seemed willing to admit. In

this vast field, there is ample room to philosophize; these objects, representing, as they do, one stage in the existence of creatures which, in their perfect state, we term and know as species, are necessarily as specifically distinct one from another as are the various moths themselves. It is, moreover, that stage of life in which, throughout all animated nature, the closest analogy exists; and bearing forcibly not only on that question of questions, the origin of species, but also upon the all-wise arrangements planned for their well-being and perpetuation, it cannot fail to interest deeply every student of the laws of Nature.

The systematist may here find, sometimes, at any rate, a help towards the classification of families and genera, by which, in course of time, he might hope for groups as natural as, for example, those of *Smerinthus*, *Hepialus*, *Lithosia*, *Arctia*, *Ennomos*, *Eupithecia*, *Tortrix*, and many others, the correctness of which is borne out by a reference to their respective eggs.

The nomenclator, too, might often arrive at a diagnosis by aid of a comparison of the eggs of closely allied species. The Entomologist would have the pleasure and satisfaction of being able to recognize his species in the egg state; and even in a mercantile point of view, the architect and the artistic designer might profit, both in mind and pocket, by a study of their forms and exquisitely sculptured surfaces.

In carrying out observations upon the egg state, the student should note—

How the egg is laid: whether unattached or attached; or, if so, by what means, and also by what part of its surface; the position of the female (and of her abdomen) at the time of laying—whether hovering, at rest, or in what other act; whether the eggs are laid singly or in batches, and, if so, in what number, and whether unarranged or how arranged; also the total number deposited, and whether nude or covered, and, in the latter case, how covered or protected, together with any exceptions, individual, special, natural, or abnormal.

When laid: at what date or dates; at what time or times of day or night; at what intervals; how long after copulation, and how long after emergence of the female.

Where laid: if not on the food-plant, where; if on the food, the exact position.

The duration of the egg state, in species and in individual cases; *influences* of temperature, soil, locality, altitude, time of year, &c., which promote, retard, or modify the natural changes.

The appearance of the egg itself, as to form, colour or colours, markings, elevations, depressions, and sculpture on the surface; together with changes, normal as well as irregular, from the time of exclusion to that of hatching.

The mode of exit of the larva should be exactly observed, and any other remarks or experiments which may present themselves to the student, should, if possible, be followed up; such as, for instance, those of proving how long the egg state may continue (*i.e.*, the ovum retain its vitality), with a view to throwing light upon the, at present, hidden causes of the disappearance and periodical re-appearance of certain species; and of discovering if there be any sexual arrangement of the eggs, as laid, to account for the emergence of a preponderance of one sex of the future moth at one time, of the other at another, from the same batch of eggs.

In describing, the best order will be to give the names of the parent species, and then, by the assistance of microscopical examination, in their order, the measurement, form, sculpture, colour, markings, and changes; the arrangement of the eggs, time, situation, &c., after which, a diagnosis from the allied species may be added, as well as any further remarks which may suggest themselves.

Preservation.

In the preservation of eggs, we must recollect that they are composed of an external membrane or shell possessing more or less transparency, which encloses at first a fluid, and afterwards (if fertilised) a larva with appendages, and that the colours and markings are, in very many cases, principally due to the fact that the contents are dimly visible through the shell, hence these objects, when simply deprived of vitality, and placed in collections without other preparation, change colour or shrivel, owing to alterations which take place in the interior.

Since the time of Swammerdam, numerous attempts have been made to preserve permanently the natural aspect of these interesting objects, but I am not aware that they have been attended by success. The following was Swammerdam's plan:—Having first squeezed out the contents through a small punctured aperture in the shell, he inflated and re-filled it by means of a *very* fine glass blowpipe, with oil of spike, in which resin had been previously dissolved. Of course if the blowpipe were heated, or the operation conducted in a hot atmosphere, coloured wax, tallow, or cocoa-butter, would answer the same purpose; but, inasmuch as opaque objects are not so readily examinable under the microscope, and as, more-

over, the form, structure, and sculpture of the shell hold the chief places in the examination of these objects, it has been considered best to mount the shell alone for the purpose; a mode of preparation which can be carried out with great facility in the following way:—Take a piece of leather, or other suitable substance, and having punched out a hole in it, fix it to the surface of a piece of glass; into the cell thus formed place the shell, and having covered it over with a disc of thin Venetian glass, ticket, and the mount is ready for the microscope, but well executed coloured drawings would, doubtlessly, give the best idea.

END OF “EGG STATE.”

THE CATERPILLAR STATE.

“ Thus are my blossoms blasted in the bud,
And caterpillars eat my leaves away.”

SHAKESPEARE.

Collecting.

With the exception of a few special manœuvres, larva collecting may be considered under three chief headings—searching—beating—and sweeping, which I now proceed to discuss in order.

Searching.—The apparatus required for this purpose will be a goodly stock of boxes, either tin with perforated lids and bottoms, or chip ones, but they must be strengthened, for it is very annoying to find that some good larva has been smashed or liberated, from the box having collapsed under pressure or come to pieces through dampness. The following appears to be the simplest, neatest, and most effectual way of rendering chip and pill boxes secure:—Cut strips of calico in a direction diagonal to the texture of the material (“on the cross,” as it is termed), of about half-an-inch in width, and of the length of the circumference of the boxes to be operated on. Brush over one of these strips with shoemakers’ paste (best for the purpose), and apply it round the lid at the line where the two pieces of wood which form it are united, gently pulling the strip at the same time, so that, by stretching it in its middle line, it will adapt itself to the angular surface; then smooth down the calico on to the top and down the sides, and if the operation has been neatly conducted, it will be found that a smooth fillet, firmly encasing the angular joint of the lid, has been formed: and then prepare the bottom in the same manner. The accom-

panying cut will give the reader a good idea of the appearance of the box when finished. Another way is to brush round the inside angles of the boxes with liquid glue; this is, of course, more quickly done, but the persistently offensive odour of the stuff is greatly against its use. The disadvantage of the chip is its comparative want of security and its food-drying nature, that of the tin its tendency, unless very freely perforated, to cause the contained larvæ to, what is commonly termed, sweat, of these two evils the collector must judge for himself which is the least; on the whole, perhaps, chip will suit *Noctuæ* best, tins the *Geometræ*. He will also require two or three large tin boxes, holding half-a-pint or so; a hooked stick, and a pocket knife (or pair of scissors) will also be found most useful; and a botanist's collecting-box would enable him to bring home a plentiful supply of fresh food, though the ordinary chimney pot hat of daily wear answers very well for the purpose, and saves the extra-burden.

Indications of the presence of larvæ are numerous, and the collector will do well to keep an eye to them.

If a leaf be eaten, it may usually be concluded that larvæ have been the cause. But slugs, snails, wasps, leaf-cutting bees, &c., frequently eat or cut leaves in such a manner as to lead the inexperienced to believe that the work has been executed by larvæ; but when the molluscs have been the cause, the leaves are generally *riddled*, and traces of their slimy trails and long string-like droppings are readily discernible, while the leaf-cutting of the Hymenopterous imagos is usually clean, and of some neat shape, as oval or circular. Other mutilations of leaves, as those caused by animals, birds, friction between contiguous branches, rupture from force, such as that of the beating-stick or pelting hail, &c., present a bruised appearance unlike that produced by the feeding larva. If, however, the edges more especially have been devoured, and the ribs more or less completely demolished, it may, as a rule, be set down as the work of a Lepidopterous larva; whereas, if the centre of the leaf be attacked, the ribs being avoided, it looks rather suspiciously indicative of saw-fly larvæ, though by no means necessarily so, for the young larvæ of many *Lepidoptera* feed much after the same manner; and case-bearers seem almost invariably to attack the centre parts of the leaf.

If the parts eaten present a fresh appearance, the larvæ, in all proba-

bility, will not be far distant, and diligent search should be made for them; in this way, it is by no means difficult to track the larvæ of many of our *Sphinges*, most of our *Bombyces* and *Pseudo-bombyces*, as well as of several *Geometræ*, butterflies, case-bearers, &c. The search must be effected by turning the branch or stem in such directions as will enable the collector to see in succession all parts of the leaves (especially of the edges and mid-ribs), leaf stalks, twigs, and of the bark of the branch itself; indeed, the procedure is the same as that which has been recommended under egg-hunting, excepting that here, we have a more certain clue as to the presence of the object of our search. In very important cases, it may even be desirable to pluck off and examine carefully in succession leaf after leaf, twig after twig; but I have some hesitation in recommending this plan, which has an air of wantonness about it.

Whenever two or more leaves are spun together, or when a shoot is unable to expand, or a leaf is folded, the hunter should at once proceed to unravel the cause, which will most frequently be found to be, or to have been, due to the presence of, Lepidopterous larvæ, and would indicate that

they were, or had been, feeding between or within. In this manner the larvæ of *Clostera*, *Cymatophora*, *Tethea*, *Dicycla*, *Cosmia*, *Epunda viminalis*, *Cheimatobia*, *Ypsipetes elutata* and *ruberaria*, *Melanippe hastata*, *Eupithecia debiliata*, *Scotosia* (when young), some species of the genera *Pyrausta*, *Botys*, *Pionea*, and *Scopula*, also some of the *Phycidæ*, *Haliastur chlorana*, and a vast majority of the *Tortricæ*, feed. As many of these larvæ, however, have a knack of wriggling from between the leaves on the slightest handling of the "leafy hut," a net should

be held beneath, preparatory to securing them. When only two leaves are drawn together, the contained larva may usually be discovered by looking through them against the light, when of course there will be no need to disturb them. When the bunches are composed of more than two leaves, one or two may be opened to ascertain whether or not the larva be present, when, if the result be satisfactory, the spun leaves should be cut off and placed in the tin box without further examination.

A withered or sickly appearance of the food-plant often denotes the presence of an internal stem or root-feeding larva, and, by attention to this point, the practised eye will detect, at a glance, an infected plant amongst a number of healthy ones. Thus, when the centre leaves of reeds die off, the presence of the larva of *M. arundinis*, *N. geminipuncta*, *Helmanni*, *Ch. forficellus*, or *S. ulvæ*, even possibly of *M. flammea*, may be suspected; the larva of *C. sagittata* is said to bite through the stems of *Thalictrum*, and then feed on the leaves thus caused to wither, and so, too, similarly, does that of *Pterophorus Teucarii*. When the flowers of thistles have an abortive appearance, some internal stem-feeding larva is generally the cause; the sickly appearance of *Echium* plants on the coast indicates the whereabouts of the larval *Odontia dentalis*; and, as further examples, I may mention *Sesia chrysidiformis* (dock), *philanthiformis* (thrift), *Leucania littoralis* (at roots of *Ammophila arenaria*), *L. phragmitidis* (reeds), *Nonagria cannæ* and *N. typhæ* (stems of *Typha latifolia*), *Gortyna* (*Arctium lappa*, *Scrophularia*, &c.), *Hydræcia* (roots of *Tussilago*, *Cyperaceæ*, &c.), *D. templi* (*Hieracleum*), *O. antiquana* (roots of *Stachys*), *Argyrolepis* (roots of various plants), *E. cirsiana* (stems of thistles in woods), and *scutulana* (ditto in open places).

This aspect of the plant is not unfrequently accompanied—in the case of stem-feeders, at any rate—by a spot on the stem, at which the larva had originally entered; after one or two stems or roots have been inspected, and the hunter is assured that the larva of a Lepidopteron is the cause of the drooping of the plant, then, if the stem be the affected part, it should be cut off considerably above and below the position (as ascertained by experience) of the contained larva, and afterwards kept planted in damp sand; when it is the root which is affected, the stem may be cut off low down, the roots pulled up, and placed in sand.

Flowers or buds drawn together, or otherwise distorted or notched, should be carefully examined. The larva may be concealed, as *Dianthæcia* and *Eup. venosata* within the capsules of *Silene*, *Lychnis*, and *Dianthus* or *Eup. tenuiata* in sallow-bloom, while *Ep. viminalis* and *Y. elutata* will sometimes spin together two or three female catkins, and so conceal themselves; it may hide itself by day, as *Triphæna fimbria*, which feeds on flowers (by choice) of primrose and other plants; or larvæ may spin a web within a flower head, as *Spilodes palealis* in the umbels of *Daucus carota*; or it may feed openly, as *Cucullia*, on mullein, water-betony, golden rod, wormwood, yarrow, or chamomile. Other instances of species whose larvæ show preference for flowers, are *Lycæna argiolus*, on holly and ivy; *Eremobia*, on grasses; the two *Hecatera*, on sow-thistles and other *Compositæ*; young *Xanthia* larvæ in sallow catkins; *Erastria*

venustula, on tormentil; most of the *Heliothidæ*, on *Ononis*, *Erodium*, *Hyoseyanus*, &c.; a large proportion of the *Eupitheciæ*, chiefly on *Umbellifera* and *Compositæ*; *Larentia cæsiata*, on whortleberry; the genus *Emmelesia*, on various flowers and seeds; *Anaitis*, on *Hypericum*; several *Tortrices*, and (though I refer the reader to Mr. Stainton's "Companion" for information respecting *Tineina*), *Depressariæ* and *Gelechiæ*.

Other flower-heads, seeds, &c., even though presenting no outward sign thereof, are so apt to contain larvæ, that the simple fact of their presence may be looked on as an *indication* of the probable inhabitants, as *A. gentianana*, in the pith of dry teasel heads; *Eup. roseana*, in the seeds of the same; *D. pisana* and *nebritana*, in pea-pods, and many others. All that is necessary is to collect the catkins, fruits, seeds, and pods, and to place them in a suitable breeding cage, such as a common scaleboard hat-box, into the lid of which a piece of muslin has been inserted for the purpose of ventilation.

Fruits, seeds, &c., which fall before they have ripened, unless the weather be very tempestuous, generally contain some larva, frequently of the family *Tortricina*, as *Carpocapsa pomonana* in apples; *C. funebrana* in plums and sloes; *C. grossana* in beech masts; *C. splendana* and *juliana* in acorns. These should all be collected as quickly after falling as possible, for the larvæ soon quit their tenements to spin up elsewhere.

Tumid twigs, rough unnatural appearance of bark, holes in the boles and branches of trees, &c., usually denote the presence of larvæ, sometimes of *Lepidoptera*, sometimes of *Diptera*, sometimes of *Coleoptera*; at one time of a wood feeder, at another of a bark feeder. As examples, let us take the unmistakeable signs of the wood-boring *Cossus* in its ravages on willows and various other trees, and *Zenzero* in ash, privet, apple, lilac, &c.; *Trochilium apiforme* and *bembeciforme* in aspen, saw, &c.; *tipuliforme* in nodulated twigs of currant-bushes; *cynipiforme* in the bark of unhealthy looking oaks; *sphegiforme*, *scoliiforme*, and *culiciforme* in birch and alder (*culiciforme* seems to prefer the stump of a tree which has been felled, so that it is advisable to search these stumps the next year after the trunk has been cut down); *formiciforme* in osier twigs; *myopiforme* in bark of apple and pear trees; besides a few *Tortrices*, such as *S. Wæberana*, in the bark of apple and pear, and *P. oppressana* in that of poplar; also *Ephestia pinguedinella*, which, by roughening the bark of ash, and ejecting "frass" at the opening of its galleries, betrays its whereabouts.

The smell, as that of the *Cossus* larva, so strongly inherent in the animal (for aught I know existing in other larvæ), would indicate its proximity, and the hunter, if it please him, may "follow up the scent."

The sound of the jaw-work of the larger larvæ, as of the *Sphingidæ*, for instance, or of falling frass, might assist us also in ascertaining their situations.

Webs, whether on trees, bushes, or herbs, frequently indicate the position of a colony of larvæ. The collector having satisfied himself that the contained larvæ are Lepidopterous, and worth the trouble of rearing, should take nest and all, as the web seems in some measure to be necessary for the welfare of the species, affording, as it does, a place of retirement for the larvæ when not engaged in the work of defoliation.

Single silken threads hanging from branches, or wherever else observed, often have a larva at the end of them; when they extend to the ground, the threads should be jerked up, so as to lift the larvæ, or they may be tracked to their destination.

Cast-off skins are sometimes noticed on the leaves of plants, &c.; when the skins are soft and fresh, the larvæ usually are not far off.

But frass (a word derived from the German, and used here to express the pellets of excrement), next perhaps to the abnormal appearances of the plants themselves, is one of the surest signs to go by. Upon the sand hills, chalky places, paths, roads, or other places where ground vegetation is scanty, we may frequently find these evidences, and from them, bringing a knowledge of the laws of gravitation to our help, make a shrewd guess at the position of the larva. We can, therefrom, also form an opinion as to the size of the larva, and, even in some cases, as to the very species (*e. g. D. galii* and *M. stellatarum*), while, from its fresh or stale appearance, we may calculate the chances of the larvæ being in the vicinity; in this way, aided by trails, the larva of *Deilephila* has often been successfully tracked.

The trails and burrowings of larvæ, as of *Deilephila*, *Agrotis*, and others, indicate the direction which they have taken, and these too may sometimes be followed up with advantage.

The presence of ichneumons and birds, such as Tomtits, Tree-creepers, &c., would also indicate that their prey, and our game, was in the neighbourhood.

The situations and modes of concealment of larvæ vary very considerably, even in individuals of the same species, according as they happen to be feeding, moulting, or reposing; some remaining attached to their food, others forsaking it at times to seek shelter elsewhere, the latter being the rule with the majority of night-feeding *Noctuæ*.

Of Butterfly larvæ, some, as those of the well-known "garden whites," feed and repose openly and exposedly upon their food-plants; others,

which are more or less onisciform in shape and green in hue, generally attach themselves, when in repose, to the mid-ribs on the under-sides of leaves, where they should be sought for on their special plants; a third set conceal themselves, when at rest, under the lower leaves of their food-plant, or on neighbouring objects; while the gregarious larvæ of some of our *Vanessidæ* remain more or less hidden in their webs.

Sphinx larvæ. Some of these feed openly, and usually hold firmly to their positions, not forsaking their food while resting; I may instance those of the *Smerinthis*. Others, as the larvæ of *A. atropos* and *S. convulsi*, hide away under sods, &c., when not occupied in feeding; but the internal wood, bark, and stem-inhabiting *Sesiidæ*, of course, do not quit their tunnelled habitations.

Bombyces have various habits in the larval state. Some, as the low-plant feeding "tigers" and "ermine," feed openly in the day-time, and especially during the hours of morning sunshine, hiding away under leaves, sods, stones, or amongst rubbish, when not so engaged; some cling closely to stems, twigs, or leaves; several colonize in webs, and a few feed internally, &c.

Geometric larvæ, whether feeding, reposing, or moulting, usually remain fixed to some part of their food-plant, except on hot, close days, or damp, warm evenings, when the tree-feeders swing at the end of silken threads. The larvæ of the *Pseudo-bombyces* also stick to their food; those of *Clostera*, however, spinning together leaves, as a means of protection and concealment.

The larvæ of Noctuæ are more inclined to roam, when they are not exerting their masticatory powers; on such occasions, they may not unfrequently be found sheltering under stones, logs, sods, rubbish, loose bark, in the chinks of bark, amongst dead leaves or ground herbage, in cut-off stems of reeds, and sometimes below the ground, those of *Leucania litoralis*, *Agrotis ripæ* and *præcox*, actually burrowing to the unusual depth of seven or eight inches in the sand; others, again, live between leaves, as *Cymatophora*, *Tethea*; in catkins, as young *Xanthiæ*; in capsules, as *Dianthaciæ*; a third class feeding openly and in the bright sunshine, as the *Cuculliæ*; while not a few, as the genera *Nonagria*, *Hydræcia*, *Miana*, *Dasypolia*, &c., are to be met with in the stems of *Graminaceæ*, *Cyperaceæ*, *Cynarocephalæ*, *Umbelliferæ*, and other plants, and *Bryophila* constructs artful lichen-covered places of retreat.

The instinct and skill displayed by larvæ in selecting such situations as will, from colour or form, render them less open to observation, is frequently remarkable, and necessitates very careful searching on the part

of the hunter. He will, however, be most materially assisted in his search by blowing upon the branch at first gently, and with net held beneath, in order to secure such larvæ as drop under this kind of treatment; and afterwards more forcibly, for by so doing, the tightly-holding larvæ are compelled instinctively to curl up their segments, erect themselves, or otherwise alter their postures, and so, perchance, betray their presence.

The great resemblance borne by many larvæ to portions of their food-plants and other objects also greatly assists them in eluding us; for instance, those twig-like larvæ that feed on birch, invariably assimilate to the stems of the tree; the same may be said of oak and other tree-feeders; those that make broom their food are found to be green, exactly like the twigs of the plant, and the smaller *Geometers* that feed on low plants, generally resemble the stems. *A. betularia* is not easy to detect from surrounding twigs of oak, with which its form exactly corresponds. The larva of *Angerona prunaria* may easily be mistaken for a twig of mountain ash, and *vice versâ*. In short, examples of the forms of every kind of twig, gnarled, knotted, prickled, rough, and smooth, are marvellously represented amongst them. The caterpillar of *S. populi* greatly resembles a leaf of willow, upon which it is frequently found feeding. The respective larvæ of *G. quercifolia*, *P. populi*, and *E. fasciaria*, when in repose, lie at full length, flatly pressed upon a branch or twig, to which, moreover, their colour often so closely approximates, that they are with difficulty discovered, the apparent tunidity of the twig being readily passed over; the larva of *Cidaria silaceata* greatly resembles the seed-pod of the *Epilobium*, on which it feeds; that of *G. papilionaria* looks, in repose, much like a birch catkin. *G. papilionaria* also occurs on alder, and when young, before hibernation, is dull purplish all over, and in this state is like, in size and colour, the unexpanded bud of alder; after the alder shoots, and *G. papilionaria* turns green, it cuts through the juicy stems of the shoots and gnaws them away for food, and then it looks like

a young partly-unfolding leaf projecting from the stem. Many larvæ assimilate, in their tints and mottlings, to various lichens; some are of the colour of the soil, others are green, like the leaves they feed on; and the coiled-up larva of *Lithosia caniola* is not unlike a little snail-shell, which is abundant in its native haunts.

Hence, the collector's hope of becoming a successful larva-hunter lies, in a great measure, in his aptitude for acquiring an extra kind of sense—a power of *discriminating* these living animals from vegetable and other environings—a power only to be obtained by experience on the hunting ground. The appearances of the larvæ themselves will be treated, further on, under Observation.

Times of year.—Larvæ may, of course, be taken all the year round; but, inasmuch as the hunter will stand a better chance of “making a bag” at particular seasons, it may be as well to mention the more profitable times during which to pursue his occupation.

Firstly, as soon after winter as may be convenient, it will be advisable to collect, at favourable localities, quantities of fallen leaves; and, having placed them on a sheet, to knock them about in order to detach any hibernating larvæ which may be present. The French say that, though this method is rather chance-work, the larvæ of many of the rarer *Noctuæ*

may sometimes be thus obtained in plenty; at any rate, it is worth trial. Nor do I doubt but that indoor examination of sackfuls of dead leaves and moss from likely localities; rubbish, soil, tufts of plants (roots and all), especially from our heaths and sandhills; and of herbage gathered from favoured banks and slopes, &c., would be most productive, not only in the matter of hibernating larvæ, but of other prizes, and would amply repay the trouble of collection or the expense of transport.

About this time also loose bark may be detached by means of a lever, such as that used by Coleopterists. The annexed figures represent an instrument, manufactured expressly for the purpose, combining neatness with strength; it has the advantage, over similar implements, of occupying a comparatively small space. Earthward-looking surfaces, the bottom of stacks and ricks, whether of faggots, heather, gorse, beans, reeds, straw, or hay, &c., should be poked about and investigated; barns, out-houses, garden

frames and pits, inspected; thatched and other roofings beaten; stones, logs, sods, &c., turned over; chinks and crevices in trees, posts, pales, and walls, peered into; tufty plants (as grasses, storks-bill, primrose, garden pinks, and the like), and tangled herbage turned up, shaken, and both these and the surface of the soil beneath them carefully examined, and, indeed, every conceivable hibernaculum should be hunted up, not forgetting the nests of *Hymenoptera* (especially deserted ones) for the *Galleridæ*.

After continued heavy rains in February, there generally ensues a mild night or two, without a breath of wind, and the ground being saturated with moisture, the atmosphere becomes foggy; these are the nights to be watched for, and turned to account by the collector of larvæ, for though many (or most) of the species he may meet with will be of small size, some can then be found which he is not likely to capture in a more matured state. When, therefore, such opportunities occur, the known spots in woods, such as openings, clearings, barn-patches, &c., should be visited soon after dark, and all the dead stalks and blades of dry grass (for in woods no new herbage is as yet visible), examined, and on these will be found numbers of larvæ, stretched out as if to enjoy the soft air on waking from their winter sleep. One such night in February, is often more remunerative than a dozen a month later, for many species, the natural habits of which keep them close to the roots of grasses, seem, on such occasions, to evince a desire to rise and survey the aspect of their locality.

When the vegetable kingdom assumes its verdant garb, larval life begins to put forth an active appearance, hibernated species issuing from their winter quarters, and newly-hatched ones from their egg-shells; of the former, some may be found on weedy banks, feeding or basking in the spring-tide sun-rays, others, on warm evenings, freely exerting their jaws on newly-expanded buds of trees, bushes, &c., or discussing the leaves of "various low plants." Thus, in the spring of the year, the larvæ of many butterflies, of several *Bombyces*, *Ourapteryx*, *Pericallia*, *Boarmia*, *Geometra*, and of some of the other Emeralds, *Acidalia*, some of *Larentia* and *Melanippe*, *Bryophila*, *Leucania*, *Xylophasia*, *Heliophobus*, *Miana*, *Triphæna*, *Noctua*, *Aplecta*, *Mania*, &c., may be found, after hibernation, feeding by night, as well as the small fry aforesaid. The latter (the small fry) are generally to be found at home upon their food, from which, upon the slightest jar or approach of danger, they lower themselves by silken threads, and can be readily collected at this period of their existence with the almost certainty of their being free from the stings of ichneumons. Most collectors, however, do not care to capture them at this stage, pre-

ferring to wait until the end of May or beginning of June, when they have advanced in growth, are more distinguishable, one species from another, and require less time and care to feed up.

After this, caterpillar life begins to wane, and collecting the perfect insect becomes the chief pursuit of the Entomologist, until again, towards autumn, vegetation once more abounds with larvæ, many of which, particularly the smaller geometric ones, and those of *Noctuæ*, whether large or small, hibernate.

Times of day.—Much depends upon whether it is desired to capture any given larva whilst feeding or reposing; the great feeding-time of the majority (as of *Noctuæ*, *Geometræ*,) is just after sun-set, and again in the morning, when the leaves are bathed in dew (a wholesome condition of things which seems to give a zest to the food); but some, as *e.g.* “Sharks,” evidently select the bright hours of sunshine for their meal-time; the hairy *Bombyces* prefer the morning sun; and other larvæ feed, on and off, through either day or night, or both. Some night-feeding larvæ which leave their food to seek repose, may be sought for in the day-time; thus, in their haunts, those of *L. monacha*, *M. aprilina*, *T. munda*, and the genus *Catocala*, are often found hiding in the crevices of the bark of oaks, willows, and other trees, or under semi-detached pieces of bark. **NOTE.**—After a boisterous wind we may, at times, meet with numbers of tree-feeders, such as *Smerinthus tiliæ*, *P. bucephala*, &c., which, having been shaken from their positions, are to be found crawling on the ground, or up the trunks to regain their food.

Searching by night is conducted much after the manner of day-work; but a lantern, to aid vision, is required, and a net (or substitute for it) becomes an important auxiliary for holding under the bushes examined, in order to circumvent such individuals as drop under the stimulus of light or through man’s interference: for which reason, the lantern should be darkened until the hunter is quite prepared to commence his search. At night, too, the trunks of trees should not be neglected, as larvæ will frequently be found crawling (swarming I might say in the case of some *Orthosidæ*) up to regain their food. Whilst “sugaring,” also, an eye should be kept open for such larvæ as may be attracted; and the blossoms of certain trees and shrubs, as of the elm, oak, willow, and arbutus, seem to allure certain larvæ, most of which, however, probably feed naturally on these plants.

For ordinary night searching, the following trees, shrubs and herbs will be found among the most productive:—the birch, elm, oak, black-thorn, white-thorn, willow, bramble (especially the young shoots), heath, dock, plantain, persicaria, geum, violet, ground-ivy, various grasses, &c.,

but all plants should be inspected, and when search has to be made for any special larva, a previous acquaintance with its natural food is necessary.

Capturing is usually an easy job, the collector simply cutting off the leaf or twig with the larva attached, or gently picking off the latter and placing it, together with a sprig of the food, in one of his boxes, taking care not to overcrowd his captures, and keeping a sharp look out for cannibals, such as *Scopelosoma satellitia* and the blood-thirsty *C. trapetzina*, with the appearance of which he should early familiarise himself. For those larvæ which drop upon the least touch, a box or net should be held beneath. Some, as, for example, those of *Cucullia*, actually jump, jerk, or wriggle with such alacrity, as to render their capture a matter of difficulty; in such cases, the collector must either be ready with his net, or else prepared to catch them dexterously in his hand as they fall, and so ensure their transfer to appropriate boxes.

Traps for larvæ may be worth trial. The gardeners' plan of sticking cones of paper or little inverted flower pots about the plants, has been recommended and seems to answer in the country, but near London I am persuaded that the catch (or "no catch") would mainly consist of *Euplexoptera* and *Mollusca*. For such larvæ as desert their food, in order to repose or hibernate, folded pieces of old flannel or carpet may be spread upon the surface of the soil in likely places, with a probability of success.

As a bait, I am not aware that any substance, barring the questionable one of sugar, has been found attractive; but as the smell of "iodine" is said to cause slugs to congregate (not that slugs have anything in common with larvæ), it is not impossible that a bait of some kind may hereafter be discovered. It has been noticed, however, that many herbivorous larvæ are remarkably fond of *lettuce*, and it has therefore been found worth while to scatter lettuce leaves over the hunting ground some hours before commencing our search for larvæ.

Beating is the next mode of collecting requiring consideration.

The apparatus ordinarily used, consists of a clap-net (the larger the better) or an umbrella, or still better, an ingenious invention, which is carried out in the following simple and inexpensive manner:—Two pieces of cane (or lath) are "hemmed" into opposite sides of a piece of window blind, and, through a hole made in the middle of one of them, a loop of string is passed. Now we must consider the use of it:—Take an umbrella net (such as that used for "sweeping"), open it, slip the loop over the

ferrule end, unfurl the blind over the net, and hold down the other cane by means of the thumb of the left hand. Thus not only is a large surface afforded for receiving the results of his beatings, but the collector may instantaneously detach the appendix, leaving him, net in hand, free to chase any insect which may suddenly start up.

Then a beating stick, such as a heavy hook-handled walking stick, will be required, and as many boxes and tins as the beater can conveniently manage to stow away in his pockets or satchel. It may be here noted that

1

2

a handy box is thus formed:—Take a chip box, put a second lid on the bottom, and punch, or cut, a hole through the second lid *and* bottom towards the circumference as in fig. 2:—when the

holes thus formed are opposite to one another, larvæ may be inserted, but when the second lid is shifted round, as in fig. 1, the holes are not opposite, and there is no opening.

The form of larva tin best suited for the pocket is “oval,” size optional, the bottom should be perforated, and the lid provided with a short tube into which a cork is fitted; this tube should project a little way into the interior of the tin. Larvæ are easily put down the tube, and the danger of crushing them, by removing and replacing the lid, is obviated. Tins of this kind, made with two or three separate compartments, are sold by “Naturalists” for the purpose.

For working the higher branches of trees, a large surface of canvas or other material, and a long pole for beating, become necessities.

Saplings may be jarred by kicking against them with the heel, but both they and the lower branches of trees are best worked by means of the mallet (“*le maillet*”), that is an ordinary mallet, the striking-end of which is loaded, with from a quarter of a pound to two pounds of lead, and encased in stout leather or gutta percha, which has the double effect of preventing, in a great measure, injury to the trees, and diminishing sound; it is an instrument much in vogue with our French neighbours, to the efficacy of which I can myself attest—a light one, with a longish handle, is most suitable for the kind of work mentioned here. In using this implement, it must be remembered that our endeavour should not be to thrash the larvæ off the food, but rather to jar or shake the food from their foot-hold, and therefore, after administering a gentle tap or two to detach such larvæ as fall readily, we should *strike sharply and suddenly in the direction opposite to that in which we desire the larvæ to fall*, otherwise most of them will be jerked away and lost, though even with the greatest care it is difficult to entirely prevent this.

The beating-stick is most serviceable for ejecting larvæ from bushes, and this is generally wielded with the right hand, while the left is employed in holding the clap net, umbrella, or "what-not," in the most advantageous position for receiving the results of the beating. Although most people consider the direction in which they apply their beating-sticks unimportant, they will stand but little chance of success in collecting the larvæ of *Aleucis pictaria*, and other clinging geometers, unless they attend to the foregoing italicised sentence.

From time to time, the "beatings" should be carefully examined, and such larvæ as the collector desires to retain, boxed with as little handling as possible. The contents of the net should then be turned about, and blown upon, or smoked, with a view to rendering active such larvæ as may have instinctively coiled up or become otherwise inert from the suddenness of the shock which has dislodged them. When the collector can find no more, he should cautiously turn out the contents, and cast a lingering glance over the net or umbrella, for any larvæ which may have attached themselves to the fabric of the receptacle.

Whilst beating by night, the operator will act wisely to eschew the use of a lantern, which will certainly do more harm than good, as it has a tendency to "scare" many larvæ, but he will, of course, require it when examining the results of his beating.

Shaking is sometimes preferable to beating bushes, as, for example, in cases where the bushes are tall, or where it is desirable to procure the larvæ of certain species without injuring them, or to tire out such as those of *Apatura*, *Dicranura*, *Notodonta*, or *Petasia*, for which the beating-stick has no terrors, and the grip of which seldom relaxes for anything short of a mortal wound or blow.

In shaking bushes, spread the sheet beneath, grasp in each hand a large stem, pull towards you, give as strong a downward jerk as strength will permit, and keep on repeating the process. For suddenly and forcibly shaking the upper branches of trees, an iron crook whipped with waxed string to the top of a long pole will be found very useful. Larvæ which are thus detached fall straight down on to the sheet below. I need hardly say it is tough work.

Shaking is also the more effective plan of working herbs, beating being hardly applicable, and is effected by gathering in the hand a head or bunch of the plant, bending it down, shaking it over an umbrella or net, and striking it against the stick or ribs.

Fumigation and vaporisation, applied to bushes, whether by

means of the smoke-bellows, in the form of tinder and tobacco smoke, or by Maw's Atmospheric odorator, or Dr. Richardson's apparatus! in the form of a cloud of Benzine, solution of Carbolic acid, Naptha, or other pungent fluid, will astonish the inmates, and doubtless cause their precipitate retreat. Fumigation has been employed as a means of disquieting the larval occupants of low herbage, with, at any rate, some amount of success.

Sweeping is undoubtedly the best plan for obtaining the inhabitants of low-ground herbage; in fact, the number of larvæ, of species otherwise far from common, which may thus be taken is often perfectly surprising: it may also be used for working bushes, but for this purpose it scarcely comes up to beating.

The apparatus required consists of the usual complement of tins and boxes, and a sweeping-net, a Coleopterist's will do, the frame of which

is formed of a ring of stout steel wire (joined or hinged for convenience of doubling up and pocketing), which screws into a rather long handle; the bag of the net should be made of "Cheese Cloth," the hem through which the ring passes (easily) being composed of leather. This answers very well for *sweeping*, but for the Lepidopterist, who is (or ought to be) always having insects flying up under his very nose, it is rather too heavy. By using powerful jack-spring for the hoop of the net (fig.), it is not difficult to construct, at a reasonable rate, an umbrella sweeping-net of such

strength, as to defy breakage, and yet sufficiently light to permit of easy aerial manipulation. The operator, as he advances step by step, makes long steady sweeps with the net alternately from right to left, and back again from left to right, much in the same manner as a mower, except that the sweeper mows, as it were, both ways, a very little practice enabling him to acquire the requisite turn of the wrist whereby the contents are retained within the net.

By day, many larvæ may thus be obtained on the slopes of hills and undercliffs, particularly on such as are covered with a variety of wild herbs; and along banks, and ditches where herbs and weeds grow rankly, &c.

Just before sunset, however, is, as with beating, the grand time to begin sweeping, when our heaths, moors, sandhills, banks, rides in woods, and other “canny” places, teem with larvæ, affording abundance of sport, especially on warm evenings in the spring months.

When the vegetation swept is of an uniform character, as heather upon a moor, bilberry on a “chase,” reeds, rushes, &c., in a marsh, or clover in a field, much time will be saved by putting the whole of the “sweepings,” *without examination*, into a closely fastening bag, for future leisurely investigation at home:—By this means, in addition to the time saved, the necessity for a lantern is done away with, and *Psyche* and *Coleophora* cases, when present, will be sometimes obtained in plenty—besides which, sawfly larvæ, beetles, *Hymenoptera* and bugs, as well as spiders, may be saved, without trouble, for friends or fellow-labourers whose spécialité leans towards them, and who may, at some future time, in gratitude for your services, mention you honourably in some great monograph or other.

To give an idea of the returns to be anticipated from an evening’s work, I may remark that it is by no means unusual, during a favourable evening towards the end of May, to meet, upon a heath or moor (as in the hollows at Shirley), with larvæ of the following in greater or less abundance: *Agrotis agathina* and *porphyrea*, *Noctua neglecta* and *Dahlii*, *A. myrtilli*, *P. hippocastinaria*, *A. strigillaria*, *F. atomaria* and *belgiaria*, *Eup. minutata* and *nanata*, &c., besides the heterogeneous *pôt pourri* before mentioned.

On reaching home, we should lose no time in looking over our sweepings, and this is the *modus operandi*.—Unfasten the bag, shake out a handful or so into a large white meat-dish, and having tied up the bag, and distributed the sweepings over the surface of the dish, proceed to examine; put the Lepidopterous larvæ into glass-topped jam pots, in which fresh sprigs of the food-plant have already been placed; the beetles into a laurel bottle; the bugs into another; pin the *Hymenoptera*; and immerse the spiders in a bottle of proof-spirit:—repeat the process until the sweepings are exhausted, placing them, after each examination, into what is known as a “sixpenny pan,” and tie this over with muslin; for days after, *Coleophoræ* will (and *Psychidæ* would too, if present) come up and attach themselves to the muslin, where they may be instantly detected.

With three lines of advice to the larva-hunter, I close this chapter on collecting:

1. Lose no time in making out the species to which your captures belong.
2. Do not think that, because you find a larva in abundance, it necessarily pertains to a common species; or the converse.
3. Do not expect to breed one tythe of the larvæ you obtain by beating and sweeping, and you will not be disappointed.

Management.

Breeding, as it is termed, is perhaps the most deeply interesting of all the charming occupations of the student of Entomology—for, whether we regard it from an instructive point of view, or pursue it from the simple love of contemplating Creation's wonders, or whether we have an eye merely to quantity and quality of 'specimens,' it is, in either case, an equally profitable employment.

The first thought which probably strikes the collector, is that Nature herself must be the best nurse, and that to follow her will therefore be the *summum bonum* of breeding; but, though for truthful natural histories and accurate records of the economy of insects, Nature undoubtedly presents the proper field for observation, experience demonstrates how few individuals (comparatively to the number of eggs), under ordinary natural surrounding conditions, attain the perfect or even chrysalis state; for it must be borne in mind that to an all-wise end, Nature destroys just so many as die, directly or indirectly, from atmospheric causes, such as cold, heat, wet, drought, wind, &c., as well as from the attacks of natural enemies and the rest; so that the natural state then, even if it were applicable, would be disadvantageous for the purposes of the larva-rearer.

Of the semi-artificial plans, that which comes nearest to the natural state of things is, perhaps, the adoption of a greenhouse, or other apartment, in which our cares feed openly on growing plants; and thus, if sashes and doors be kept well closed, many enemies, such as birds, mice, wasps, and large Ichneumons, are kept at bay, though centipedes, woodlice, spiders, *Acari*, earwigs, *Tineæ*, ants, small Ichneumons, parasitic *Diptera*, and other plagues, still gain admittance; besides—the chances of wandering larvæ meeting with death by starvation, mutilation, or suffocation, are, to say the least, very considerable, the temperature must, in many cases, be objectionable, and, owing to want of accuracy, this plan must be all but useless for descriptive purposes. For such larvæ, however, as are large and stick closely to their food, it affords the most agreeable and convenient means for observation, short of the natural state itself.

Another attempt to follow Nature is to confine the larvæ, together with a bunch or branch of their growing food, within a sleeve of gauze or leno; but, however perfect in theory the plan may appear, in practice the ill effects of a shower of rain or storm of wind are very painfully perceptible, in addition to which nothing—absolutely nothing is gained, facility of observation is all but lost, the trouble of feeding is not overcome, and security is not attained, for the cage so formed is pretty sure to be rent by inevitable rotting and decay, torn by the wind or by the collector in the changing process, gnawed by mice and earwigs, or even by the enclosed larvæ themselves, to say nothing of the whole concern being carried off bodily by some inquisitive or acquisitive biped, at least, such is *my* experience.

Cages, or prisons, which, while they more or less restrict the liberty of the occupants within, also serve to protect them from the attacks of enemies without, &c., are the more confessedly artificial appliances that come under our consideration; of these, I here enumerate a few of the more prominent, glancing at the principles involved in their construction.

The old-fashioned safe-like breeding cage, is usually composed of a wooden frame work, and has the top, sides, and doors covered with either muslin (canvas), wire-gauze, glass, perforated zinc, or a combination of two or more of these, at the option of the proprietor. The best examples of this kind of cage are well ventilated, admit light, and secure the enclosed larvæ from escape.

Hat, toy, and other boxes, the lids being covered with gauze, form useful and handy cages, when better are not obtainable; into these, the food-plant, plugged into a phial of water, or stuck into a juicy potato, may be inserted, and the larvæ placed thereon; in the case of flat shallow boxes, however, it is evident that the food, in its water vessel, would not stand upright; this difficulty is at once overcome by attaching a loop to one end at the back of the box, and, with this, hanging it up by a nail on the wall.

An air-tight process of feeding is a favourite plan of rearing with many, by which the food is kept fresh for a considerable length of time. It is usually effected by grinding the lip of a jam-pot, so that it may be accurately fitted with a piece of smooth glass, and into this receptacle the food and larvæ are placed; but the close, unhealthy atmosphere, which, in spite of every caution and attention, must, in greater or less degree, be engendered, seems to me to render it unfit for general purposes, although I can strongly recommend it (as well as air-tight feeding in a closely-

stopped bottle) for accommodating very young larvæ, until they have attained sufficient size to be removed to a more appropriate cage: with this *proviso*, however, that both cage and food be dry, otherwise many of the young larvæ will be 'found drowned' in the moisture which is apt to condense on the sides of the too-readily heat-conducting material of this cage: great care, also, should be taken that the temperature be not raised by the heat of the hand, or by the admission of sun-rays.

Lamp-chimneys, cucumber-glasses, &c., fitted, at their open extremities with bungs, are sometimes employed, as also are perforated tin boxes. These latter, however, have the further disadvantage of being opaque, and so preventing observation. The chief use of air-tight feeding comes into play when the larvæ of *Micro-Lepidoptera* are the subjects of attention.

Another contrivance is carried out by suspending the food, the cut-off ends of which have been securely plugged into a phial of water, within a wide-mouthed bottle or jar; the chief drawback is that any hapless larva which chanced to drop would find itself much in the position of Daniel—barring the lions.

A flower-pot, with the hole at the bottom stopped, and the top covered with gauze or leno, kept in place by a piece of "elastic," offers an exceedingly cheap and simple cage, which, though laying no claims to perfection, the breeder will do well to think of in the hour of need. This flower-pot cage, when half filled with dead leaves and moss, and protected from the rain by an umbrella of card-board or other material, forms an excellent out-door cage for the accommodation of hibernating hairy larvæ.

Lichen feeders may be provided for as follows:—Take a moderate sized flower-pot, fill it three quarters full with soil which has been freed from vermin, then, upon the surface plant some *Lichen caninus* and tufts of wall moss, taking care that the latter is free from slugs, &c. The next step is to make the surface smooth with a thin layer of sand; and this is to be kept well watered until, by degrees, a green stain grows up the sides of the pot, which is then fit for the reception of the larvæ, most of which will find a subsistence either on the lichen or on the stain.

A larvarium may be easily, elegantly, and economically formed, by resting a muslin-topped glass cylinder on a pan of damp sand. The muslin, if new, needs only to be wetted and applied, when, owing to the contained dressing, it will at once adhere to the glass, without other fastening. The sand, when small larvæ are to be the occupants, should be covered with thick writing paper, through perforations in which the food can be passed. Thus is produced a cage which offers the advantages of admitting light and air, security, free observation, and not only keeps the

food fresh, but readily allows of the operation of “changing” when necessary—a most important consideration. If it be desirable to economize, a flower-pot filled with mould (into which the cut food, or, better still, the growing plant should be inserted) may be substituted for the pan of sand; and, as for the cylinders, old lamp shades, broken tumblers, and other make-shifts may be used, though the neatest, cheapest, and most transparent cylinders are certainly the cut-off bottoms of glass shades, which can be procured from the warehouses, at prices varying from a penny upwards, according to size.

An unglazed earthenware plate (b) [*vide* the annexed diagram], perforated at the centre for the food-plant to pass through into a jam pot (a) containing water, beneath, is a great improvement on the damp sand; the gauze-topped cylinder (e) above resting on the rim of the plate: but even porcelain is too good a conductor of heat to suit the prolegs of such larvæ as may pass a night upon its surface; a piece of muslin (c) should therefore be strained from the centre perforation, where it is to be fixed, by means of a sail-eyelet (d) (nautically termed a “thimble”), to over the circumference, whereon it should be fastened firmly down, thus forming a capital non-conducting floor, which permits the passage of air *underneath* the cylinder, and thereby allows a considerable amount of ventilation without draught.

A still further improvement has been achieved by making the floor of the cage slope downwards from the centre to the circumference, so that frass, &c., are thrown away from the centre, and larvæ, which may have left their food, have to crawl up-hill to regain it. It is carried out in the manner represented by the *right* side of the diagram overleaf:—

(1). Take a piece of book-muslin (i), and from its centre-part cut out a circular aperture of the diameter of the small end (bottom) of a jam pot (c); force the latter nearly through the aperture, and then tie the muslin firmly (underneath) to the groove (e) which is under the lip of the jam pot.

(2.) Fix the bottom of the jam pot, by means of elastic glue, to the centre of an inverted lid (wooden) of a round box (k, l), and strain over and fasten the muslin before mentioned, to the hoop of the lid.

(3.) Insert a moveable water vessel (*d*) in the jam pot above alluded to, and fit the

latter with a bung (*a a a*) which is to be perforated at (*b b*) for the purpose of allowing the ends of the food to pass

through into the water vessel below.

(4.) Place the gauze-topped cylinder (*m*) on the muslin stage (*i*) and the cage is complete.

By means of a little decorative ingenuity, a really handsome ornament may be made of this breeding cage, and that, too, at an incredibly small outlay.

Having disposed of the cages suitable for ordinary feeding purposes, it will be well to say a few words concerning those contrivances which are appropriate for larvæ when about to prepare themselves for assuming the pupa state.

For those which go to earth, the old safe-like cage may be fitted with a trough of zinc or tin, for holding the soil; or a flower-pot may be used, its porous composition being far preferable to the metals above named, the presence of which is decidedly objectionable. But if neatness be desired, a modification of the cylinder cage (as represented by the *left* side of the preceding diagram), either with or without the muslin stage, will be found both useful and ornamental.—When the muslin stage is used, instead of being tied to the grove of the jam pot, the borders of the central aperture are stitched on a ring of wire (*g*), having a diameter of two or three inches more than the jam pot, and supported by radiating wires, of which (*h*) is one, secured at (*f*) to the grove of the jam pot (*c*). A propagating seed-pan (*p*), or other suitable vessel, must, of course, be substituted for the inverted lid. Larvæ find their way to the soil readily enough through the interstice (*g* to *f*) which is left between the ring and the jam pot.

Soils, &c., for larvæ to enter.—Considerable diversity of opinion, respecting the substances, mixtures, &c., best adapted for this purpose, exists among Entomologists—probably, at one time, one is preferable, at another, another; that which is most suitable for one species may be objectionable in the case of others. In selecting our soil we should be

guided by the habits of the species, for the benefit of which we are cogitating, the nature of the soil which it inhabits, and the position (wet, dry, hot, or cold) which it selects for its transformation. For the rest, I must leave it to the choice of the reader, merely contenting myself with an enumeration of the most approved kinds: loam, leaf-mould, pine forest mould, silver sand, sand, or "ballast"—the latter is, however, apt to "cake,"—the rubbish from the roots of oaks and forest trees, rotten wood, bran, cocoa-nut fibre, birch catkins (rubbed between the hands into light flakes), or combinations of from two to half-a-dozen of them. All soils should be first well baked to destroy animal life (such as *Acuri*, slugs, eggs or larvæ of *Tineæ*, spiders, wire-worms, &c.), they should then be tied up in canvas bags, damped, and kept in a moist, but ventilated, situation until required for use. Where a certain degree of moisture has to be kept up, the soil should be covered with a layer of cocoa-nut fibre—a capital means of preventing it from becoming too dry,—or with moss first prepared by a few dips into boiling water.

The breeding-house, or apartment, to be used for the purpose, should, of course, be constructed, or chosen, with a view to the health of the occupants, and the following conditions should be taken into consideration. *Aspect*.—One side facing the east, at any rate, should be provided with a window, in order that the rays of the early morning sun may gain admittance: this, with many larvæ, is a condition of paramount importance. *Ventilation*.—This should be complete, but so managed that thorough draught be avoided, at the same time that the apertures by which it is effected are sufficiently small to prevent the ingress of "natural enemies" to our nurselings; for bringing this about, the free employment of finely perforated zinc in the construction of the breeding-house, is of the utmost utility. *Temperature*.—This ought never to be too high; a roofing of Portland cement (flat tiles being embedded in it for the purpose or "tying" it together), being nearly white when dry, affords the greatest protection against the vertical rays of the sun, but, in addition, when the weather is excessively hot, watering the floor and ground adjacent to the breeding-house is of advantage. *Space*.—As much room as possible should be allowed; the more the better. *Light*.—It is rather a disputed point whether a large or small amount of light is advantageous in a general way: my own impression is that some larvæ thrive best with plenty of light, others in comparative darkness; and I think it might be taken as a criterion, that if the perfect insects are day-flyers (such as butterflies, for example), their respective larvæ will be found to thrive best with a more or less abundant supply of light; while if they shun light (as the majority

of the *Noctuæ*), their larvæ will get on better in a darkened situation; the apartment should therefore be constructed with a view to this, and the cages arranged accordingly.

Food.—Doubtless the rearer of *Lepidoptera* must often be perplexed as to what (in the event of the proper food being unobtainable) he shall provide for the sustenance of his larvæ. With a view to setting him on the tack which has been found from experience the most likely to yield success, the following few suggestions and lists are offered in the hope that they may, at any rate, serve to arrange his ideas upon the point.

As a matter of course, when the true food-plant is at hand, it should be used in preference to all others; should it not naturally occur in the neighbourhood, it may, previously to its requirement, be potted or transferred to his garden-beds, in readiness for future use; or it may be regularly transmitted at suitable intervals, secured in tins, when the locality in which it occurs is too far off to admit of his taking a series of journeys after fresh supplies of it. On the other hand, if the known food be not obtainable, a substitute must be found.

Substitute food-plants may be divided into, at least, four classes, viz.:—Allied species (cultivated forms, &c.) of plants; allied genera (families may here be included); known substitutes (non-allied); generally favourite foods.

Allied species to the true food-plant, will usually offer the best chances of success. By way of a few examples of this class of substitutes let me mention the following:—for aspen, poplar may be tried; for bed-straw, clivers; for bilberry, cranberry or cowberry; for bramble, raspberry; for campion, ragged robin; for canterbury bell, hare-bell; for sal-low, willow; for sloe, plum or greengage; for primrose, polyanthus; for ragwort, groundsel; for rock-rose, gum-cistus; for sweet-briar, rose; for vetchling, everlasting pea; for violet, heartsease; for weld, mignonette; for willow herb, rose-bay; for wormwood or mugwort, southernwood; besides many others, especially cultivated forms for wild ones, which might be enumerated.

Allied genera present a second choice of food-plant: subjoined is a list of some examples (classed under the headings of the orders or sub-orders to which they belong), for the guidance of those whose acquaintance with botanical lore is, as in my own case, scanty.

SOME EXAMPLES OF ALLIED GENERA OF PLANTS.

RANUNCULACEÆ: *Actæa*, Baneberry.—*Aconitum*, Monkshood.—*Adonis*, Pheasant's-eye.—*Anemone*, Anemone.—*Aquilegia*, Columbine.—

Caltha, Marsh marigold.—*Clematis*, Traveller's joy.—*Delphinium*, Larkspur.—*Helleborus*, Hellebore.—*Myosurus*, Mouse-tail.—*Nigella*, Devil-in-the-bush.—*Pæonia*, Pæony.—*Ranunculus*, Crow-foot.—*Thalictrum*, Meadow rue.—*Trollius*, Globe Flower.

PAPAVERACEÆ: *Chelidonium*, Celandine.—*Glaucium*, Horned poppy.—*Mecanopsis*, Welsh poppy.—*Papaver*, Poppy.

ARABIDEE (CRUCIFERÆ): *Arabis*, Rock cress.—*Barbarea*, Winter cress.—*Cardamine*, Bitter cress.—*Cheiranthus*, Wall flower.—*Matthiola*, Stock.—*Nasturtium*, Water cress.—*Turritis*, Tower mustard.

BRASSICACEÆ AND SISYMBREE (CRUCIFERÆ): *Brassica*, Cabbage, Turnip.—*Erysimum*, Treacle mustard.—*Hesperis*, Dame's violet.—*Sinapis*, Mustard.—*Sisymbrium*, Hedge mustard.

ALYSSINEÆ (CRUCIFERÆ): *Alyssum*, Alyssum.—*Armoracea*, Horseradish.—*Cochlearia*, Scurvy grass.—*Draba*, Whitlow grass.

LEPIDIEÆ AND THLASPEÆ (CRUCIFERÆ): *Capsella*, Shepherd's purse.—*Iberis*, Candy tuft.—*Lepidium*, Cress.—*Thlaspi*, Pennycress.

SILENEÆ (CARYOPHYLLACEÆ): *Agrostemma*, Corn-cockle.—*Dianthus*, Pink.—*Lychnis*, Campion.—*Saponaria*, Soap-wort.—*Silene*, Catchfly.

ALSINEÆ (CARYOPHYLLACEÆ): *Alsine*, Chickweed.—*Arenaria*, Sandwort.—*Cerastium*, Mouse-ear.—*Cherleria*, Cyphel.—*Polycarpon*, All-seed.—*Sagina*, Pearl-wort.—*Spergula*, Spurrey.—*Stellaria*, Stitch-wort.

MALVACEÆ: *Althæa*, Marsh Mallow.—*Lavatera*, Tree Mallow.—*Malva*, Mallow.—*Alcea*, Hollyoak.—*Hibiscus*, Hibiscus.

GERANIACEÆ: *Erodium*, Stork's-bill.—*Geranium*, Crane's-bill.—*Pelargonium*, Greenhouse geranium.

VICIEÆ (PAPILIONACEÆ): *Lathyrus*, Everlasting pea.—*Orobus*, Bitter vetch.—*Pisum*, Pea.—*Vicia*, Vetch.

LOTEÆ (PAPILIONACEÆ): *Anthyllis*, Kidney vetch.—*Astragalus*, Milk-vetch.—*Cytisus*, Broom.—*Genista*, Greenweed.—*Lotus*, Bird's-foot trefoil.—*Medicago*, Medick.—*Melilotus*, Melilot.—*Ononis*, Rest-harrow.—*Trifolium*, Trefoil.—*Trigonella*, Fennygreek.—*Ulex*, furze.

HEDYSABEE (PAPILIONACEÆ): *Astrolobium*, Joint vetch.—*Hippocrepis*, Horse-shoe vetch.—*Onobrychis*, Sainfoin.—*Ornithopus*, Bird's-foot.

AMYGDALÆ (ROSACEÆ): *Amygdalus*, Almond, Peach.—*Cerasus*, Cherry, Laurel.—*Prunus*, Plum, Sloe.

POMACEÆ (ROSACEÆ): *Cotoneaster*, Cotoneaster.—*Cratægus*, Hawthorn.—*Mespilus*, Medlar.—*Pyrus*, Crab, Service, Pear.

DRYADEÆ (ROSACEÆ): *Agrimonia*, Agrimony.—*Comarum*, Marsh cinquefoil.—*Dryas*, Mountain Avens.—*Fragaria*, Strawberry.—*Geum*, Avens.—*Potentilla*, Cinquefoil.—*Rubus*, Bramble, Raspberry.

SANGUISORBEE (ROSACEÆ): *Alchemilla*, Lady's mantle.—*Poterium*, Salad-burnet.—*Sanguisorba*, Burnet.

ONAGRACIÆ: *Circæa*, Enchanter's nightshade.—*Epilobium*, Willow-herb.—*Fuchsia*, Fuchsia.—*Isnardia*, Isnardia.—*Enothera*, Evening primrose.

UMBELLIFERÆ: *Ægopodium*, Gout-weed.—*Æthusa*, Fool's parsley.—*Angelica*, Angelica.—*Anthriscus*, Beaked parsley.—*Bunium*, Earth-nut.—*Carum*, Caraway.—*Chærophylum*, Chervil.—*Cicuta*, Cowbane.—*Conium*, Hemlock.—*Daucus*, Carrot.—*Feniculum*, Fennel.—*Hæracleum*, Cow-parsley.—*Ligusticum*, Lovage.—*Peucedaneum*, Hog's fennel.—*Petroselinum*, Parsley.—*Pimpinella*, Burnet-saxifrage, *Sium*, Skirret.

CAPRIFOLIACEÆ: *Linnæa*, Linnæa.—*Lonicera*, Honeysuckle.—*Sambucus*, Elder.—*Viburnum*, Guelder-rose.—*Symphoricarpos*, Snowberry.

STELLATÆ: *Asperula*, Woodruff.—*Galium*, Bedstraw.—*Rubia*, Madder.—*Sherardia*, Field madder.

DIPSACACEÆ: *Dipsacus*, Teasel.—*Knautia*, Knautia.—*Scabiosa*, Scabious.

CORYMBIFERÆ (COMPOSITÆ): *Achillea*, Yarrow.—*Anthemis*, Chamomile.—*Artemisia*, Wormwood.—*Aster*, Star-wort.—*Bellis*, Daisy.—*Cineraria*, Flea-wort.—*Chrysanthemum*, Ox-eye.—*Eupatorium*, Hemp-agrimony.—*Gnaphalium*, Cud-weed.—*Helianthus*, Sunflower, Jerusalem artichoke.—*Inula*, Elecampane.—*Petasitis*, Butter-burr.—*Pulicaria*, Flea-bane.—*Senecio*, Groundsel, Ragwort.—*Solidago*, Golden rod.—*Tanacetum*, Tansy.—*Tussilago*, Colt's-foot.

SYNAROCEPHALÆ (COMPOSITÆ): *Carduus*, Thistle.—*Centaurea*, Knap-weed.—*Cynara*, Artichoke.—*Lappa*, Burdock.—*Onopordon*, Cotton thistle.—*Serratula*, Saw-wort.—*Silybum*, Milk thistle.—*Xanthium*, Bur-weed.

CICHORACEÆ (COMPOSITÆ): *Apargia*, Hawkbit.—*Arnoseris*, Swine's succory.—*Cichorium*, Succory.—*Crepis*, Hawk's-beard.—*Helminthia*, Ox-tongue.—*Hieracium*, Hawkweed.—*Hypochæris*, Cat's ear.—*Lactuca*, Lettuce.—*Taraxicum*, Dandelion.—*Picris*, Picris.—*Sonchus*, Sow-thistle.—*Scorzonera*, Scorzonera.—*Tragopogon*, Goat's-beard.

CAMPANULACEÆ: *Campanula*, Bell-flower.—*Jasione*, Sheep's bit.—*Phyteuma*, Rampion.—*Prismatocarpus*, Corn bell-flower.

ERICACEÆ: *Arbutus*, Strawberry tree.—*Arctostaphilus*, Bearberry.—*Azalea*, Azalea.—*Calluna*, Ling.—*Erica*, Heath.—*Menziesia*, Menziesia.—*Rhododendron*, Rhododendron.

OLEACEÆ: *Fraxinus*, Ash.—*Ligustrum*, Privet.—*Syringa*, Lilac.

GENTIANEÆ: *Cicendia*, Cicendia.—*Chlora*, Yellow-wort.—*Erythræa*, Centaury.—*Gentiana*, Gentian.—*Menyanthes*, Buckbean.—*Villarsia*, Villarsia.

BORAGINACEÆ: *Anchusa*, Alkanet.—*Asperugo*, Mad-wort.—*Borago*, Borage.—*Cynoglossum*, Hound's-tongue.—*Echium*, Viper's bugloss.—*Lithospermum*, Gromwell.—*Lycopsis*, Bugloss.—*Myosotis*, Scorpion-grass.—*Pulmonaria*, Lung-wort.—*Symphytum*, Comfrey.

ATROPEÆ (SOLANACEÆ): *Atropa*, Belladonna.—*Datura*, Thorn-apple.—*Hyoscyamus*, Henbane.

SOLANEÆ (SOLANACEÆ): *Solanum*, Bitter-sweet, Nightshade, Potato.—*Lycium*, "Tea" tree.

RHINANTHIDÆ (SCROPHULARIACEÆ): *Bartsia*, Bartsia.—*Euphrasia*, Eye-bright.—*Melampyrum*, Cow wheat.—*Pedicularis*, Louse-wort.—*Rhinanthus*, Yellow rattle.—*Veronica*, Speedwell.

ANTIRRHINIDÆ (SCROPHULARIACEÆ): *Antirrhinum*, Snapdragon.—*Digitalis*, Foxglove.—*Linaria*, Toadflax.—*Mimulus*, Monkey flower.—*Scrophularia*, Water betony.—*Verbascum*, Mullein.

LABIATÆ: *Ajuga*, bugle.—*Ballota*, Horehound.—*Calamintha*, Calamint.—*Clinopodium*, Wild basil.—*Galeopsis*, Hemp-nettle.—*Glechoma*, Ground ivy.—*Lamium*, Dead nettle.—*Mellitis*, Bastard balm.—*Mentha*, Mint.—*Nepeta*, Cat-mint.—*Origanum*, Marjoram.—*Prunella*, Selfheal.—*Salvia*, Sage.—*Scutellaria*, Skullcap.—*Stachys*, Wound-wort.—*Teucrium*, Germander.—*Thymus*, Thyme.

PRIMULACEÆ: *Anagallis*, Pimpernel.—*Centunculus*, Chaff-weed.—*Cyclamen*, Cyclamen.—*Glaux*, Sea milkwort.—*Hottonia*, Featherfoil.—*Lysimachia*, Loosestrife.—*Primula*, Primrose.—*Samolus*, Brook weed.—*Trientalis*, Chickweed winter-green.

CHENOPODIACEÆ: *Atriplex*, Orache.—*Beta*, Beet.—*Chenopodium*, Goose-foot.—*Salicornia*, Glass-wort.—*Salsola*, Salt-wort.—*Spinacia*, Spinach.

POLYGONACEÆ: *Oxyria*, Mountain sorrel.—*Polygonum*, Knot-grass, Persicaria.—*Rumex*, Sorrel, Dock.—*Rheum*, Rhubarb.

EUPHORBIACEÆ: *Buxus*, Box.—*Euphorbia*, Spurge.—*Mercurialis*, Mercury.

URTICACEÆ: *Cannabis*, Hemp.—*Humulus*, Hop.—*Parietaria*, Wall pellitory.—*Urtica*, Nettle.

BETULINÆ: *Alnus*, Alder.—*Betula*, Birch.

CUPULIFERÆ: *Carpinus*, Hornbeam.—*Castanea*, Chestnut.—*Corylus*, Hazel.—*Fagus*, Beech.—*Quercus*, Oak.

SALICINÆ: *Populus*, Poplar and Aspen.—*Salix*, Osier, Sallow, Willow.

CONIFERÆ: *Juniperus*, Juniper.—*Pinus*, Fir.—*Taxus*, Yew.

“A known substitute,” by which is meant a plant known, in the case of some other larva, to afford nourishment in the absence of its more accustomed food, is a third resource; thus, by way of giving an example or two, bilberry is the food of *Gastropacha ilicifolia*, but it will also eat sallow; *ergo*, it would seem reasonable to suppose that another species, the food of which is bilberry, would also eat sallow, and this in practice we find (very often, at all events) to be the case. And again, it is a curious fact, that all species which feed naturally on the *Crucifere* will also eat *Tropæolum*, as well as *Reseda*,—plants nowise allied to them or to one another. A reference to the following Table, which I have endeavoured to condense as much as possible, will, I trust, sometimes assist the reader in selecting a substitute food-plant.

A FEW EXAMPLES OF KNOWN SUBSTITUTES (NON-ALLIED PLANTS).

SUBSTITUTES.		EXAMPLES.	SUBSTITUTES.		EXAMPLES.
Apple	and Ash	 <i>Z. æsculi</i>	Honeysuckle and Rose	 <i>A. derivata</i>	
„	„ Lime	 <i>X. petrificata</i>	Heath and Bog-myrtle	 <i>A. menyanthidis</i>	
„	„ Poplar	 <i>S. ocellatus</i>	„ „ Hare-bell	 <i>A. Ashworthii</i>	
Bedstraw	„ Convolvulus	 <i>A. emarginata</i>	Ivy „ Buckthorn	 <i>L. Argiolum</i>	
„	„ Epilobium	 <i>C. elpenor</i>	„ „ Elder	 <i>O. sambucaria</i>	
„	„ Fuchsia	 <i>D. gali</i>	„ „ Holly	 <i>L. Argiolum</i>	
„	„ Vine	 <i>D. livornica</i>	Lime „ Elm	 <i>S. tilia</i>	
Bilberry	„ Bramble	 <i>H. rectilinea</i>	Oak „ Ash	 <i>S. illustraria</i>	
„	„ Dogwood	 <i>E. advenaria</i>	„ „ Elm	 <i>S. lunaria</i>	
„	„ Rose	 <i>E. advenaria</i>	„ „ Lime	 <i>P. monacha</i>	
Birch	„ Beech	 <i>T. consonaria</i>	„ „ Whitethorn	 <i>H. thymiaria</i>	
„	„ Hazel	 <i>G. papilionaria</i>	„ „ Willow	 <i>O. gonostigma</i>	
„	„ Spindle	 <i>B. repandata</i>	Sallow „ Bilberry	 <i>E. advenaria</i>	
„	„ Whortleberry	 <i>B. abietaria</i>	„ „ Birch	 <i>D. falcata</i>	
Bramble	„ Hazel	 <i>Psy. calvella</i>	„ „ Heath	 <i>E. cribrum</i>	
„	„ Heath	 <i>S. carpinii</i>	„ „ Marjoram	 <i>L. marginata</i>	
Broom	„ Brake-fern	 <i>H. pisi</i>	„ „ Oak	 <i>O. gonostigma</i>	
„	„ Honeysuckle	 <i>H. thalassina</i>	„ „ Plum	 <i>S. illunaria</i>	
„	„ Lilac	 <i>T. gothica</i>	„ „ Primrose	 <i>T. fimbria</i>	
„	„ Vetch	 <i>D. obfusca</i>	„ „ Yarrow	 <i>N. zonaria</i>	
„	„ Veronica	 <i>H. pisi</i>	Stachys „ Clematis	 <i>A. strigilata</i>	
Currant	„ Hop	 <i>Eup. assimolata</i>	Yarrow „ Marjoram	 <i>A. gilvaria</i>	
Honeysuckle	„ Nettle	 <i>P. iota</i>	„ „ Pink	 <i>A. incanata</i>	
„	„ Privet	 <i>P. syringaria</i>	„ „ Vetch	 <i>A. incanata</i>	

“Generally favourite foods” come last, but by no means least; they afford us a very likely group to choose from, especially in the case of such larvæ the true food of which remains undetected; indeed, for the rearing of previously undiscovered larvæ, particularly of the *Geometridæ* and *Noctuidæ*, this class of “substitute foods” is invaluable. It is perfectly wonderful to note how universally *Polygonum aviculare* is esteemed by the larvæ of *Geometridæ*. This fact was communicated to me some years since by my valued friend, Mr. Henry Doubleday, since which time I have invariably offered it to all such larvæ, concerning the food of which I had any doubt, and, in almost all cases, it was at once adopted; it undoubtedly holds the first place, followed by *Lotus*, *Glechoma*, &c., among low plants, with sallow and blackthorn among shrubs: for *Noctuæ* Plantain, Dandelion, Dock, Lettuce, Clover, Borage, and Goosefoot, will all be found very serviceable, and so also will Sallow, Birch, and Plum, in the case of such larvæ as may be suspected of feeding on taller vegetation, though it must be owned that the great bulk of “larvæ unknown” feed upon low herbs.

Feeding.—The kind of food having been determined upon, a few hints as to collecting it, &c., may be added. As a general rule, food, like fruit, should be collected early in the morning, and, if conveyed any distance, packed very lightly. When, however, intended for juvenile larvæ which are being reared on the air-tight principle, it must not be gathered until the morning sun has dispelled the dew from its surface; though for more advanced individuals, when fed in ventilated situations, this same dew, or the moisture caused by a shower or even by the water tap, gives an invigorating fillip to the appetite, which cannot be otherwise than healthful. It may be here noted that when the food is too wet, the best and quickest plan to dry it is—having placed it in a towel, the four corners of which are held in one’s hand,—to *swing* it round and round, and thus get rid of the extra dampness by centrifugal force, whereby the plant is not bruised, as would be the case if shaking were resorted to, to dislodge the moisture; or it may be nicely dried in the draught caused by opening a window-sash two or three inches, the food being placed half-a-foot inside the window.

The more mature foliage is generally chosen by the larvæ, but by no means invariably, since many appear to prefer the young tender shoots, and, of course, in some cases, even unexpanded buds.

Nearly all larvæ like their food healthy and fresh: but the risk of their being injured in changing it, often makes it advisable to be content with clipping the ends of the twigs, &c., which go into the water; and,

indeed, this practice will keep the food fresh for a long time. There are, however, some special and curious exceptions to the rule that fresh, healthy food is preferred; for, while the larva of *Aleucis pictaria* selects the stunted unhealthy-looking sloe-bushes, *Pterophorus teucarii* actually causes its food to wither before partaking of it; and in the case of *Petasia nubeculosa*, careful feeding with fresh food seems to fail, though a stale dryish diet affords a far greater likelihood of success.

It is sometimes considered desirable, and occasionally even absolutely necessary, to supply captured larvæ with food procured, if not off the same tree or shrub, at least from the same locality as that in which they previously fed.

Before the requisite food is in leaf, or even in bud, it sometimes happens, even in Nature, that eggs hatch, and hibernating larvæ come forth, in which case unopened buds, if obtainable, may be split and offered with considerable chances of success; they must, however, be frequently renewed, and not allowed to dry up. By this means, with care, and luck on our side, we may manage to keep our larvæ going, while we look out for a stray example of a food-plant, in some sheltered nook or other, perchance more forward than the rest of its species, or till buds have in due time expanded into little leaves: but if not even buds are attainable, then our only alternative lies between supplying, at suitable intervals, twigs of the food-plant, peeled or rasped twigs and bark, finding a "substitute," as, *e. g.*, ivy, laurustinus, or seeds of plantain, or leaving our *protégés* to take their chance with sliced carrot, turnip or potato.

An alterative diet, in the case of certain larvæ, not altogether polyphagous, seems important—even necessary: thus it has been recommended to feed *Diptera Orion* on oak and birch; *Noctua neglecta*, and, perhaps, too, *Agrotis agathina*, should be provided with willow as well as heath. *Cerastis vaccinii* has been found to thrive best on oak and dock. The larva of a species feeding naturally on one plant may, in the next generation, refuse its natural food and adopt another, thus—one season *Tephrosia consonaria* would not touch beech, but fed up readily enough on birch, and *Ennomos erosaria* reared upon oak, would eat nothing but birch in the next batch.

The larvæ of coast species are at times exceedingly hard to rear, when the attempt is made to feed them up in inland situations—in such cases it is frequently imperative to procure food from the sea-side; but sometimes even a substitute food, when sprinkled with sea brine, or a solution of sea salt of corresponding strength, will answer instead of the native food, as in the instance of *Bombyx castrensis*, which will thrive on pickled wild cherry.

All food should be rigidly examined for cannibals and other vermin before admitting it to our breeding-cages.

For the management of internal stem or root-feeders, seed-feeders, &c., see pages *ante* 15 and 16. This applies also to larvæ feeding on vegetable refuse, dried fruits, honey-comb, nests, feathers, hair, dung, &c. For the best treatment of Lichen feeders, see p. 30.

Wood-feeders may be kept in flower-pots or wide-mouthed bottles, with wire-gauze covers, or in tins (for nothing in strength short of *tin* or earthenware and wire-gauze will defy the jaws of *Cossus*), may be allowed either to remain in the logs, branches, or twigs in which they were originally feeding when removed, or else supplied with the fresh cut (but not wet) sawdust and chips of their food. The tins should be freely perforated, and a sharp eye should be kept for mildew, which, when present, should be removed, and fresh food supplied. These remarks similarly apply to bark feeders.

Manipulation.—The diversified habits of larvæ, from their escape from the egg onwards, frequently perplex the breeder as to the best means of managing them. To begin with the juveniles: some of them will not take kindly to their food; and this often happens if a substitute have been forced upon them in lieu of their legitimate diet; they become restless, crawl wildly about, flock to the lightest part of the cage, squeeze themselves through ridiculously small apertures, entangle and suspend themselves hopelessly in festoons, and, in fact, do anything rather than settle down rationally to their breakfasts. Such individuals should be reared, until more accustomed to their new mode of life, in air-tight jam-pots, the tops of which are covered over with green glass, for the purpose of darkening the interior of the vessel; a condition of things usually promotive of quietude among the brood—quietude giving time for reflection, and rise to second thoughts (proverbially best) that the cravings of nature should be satisfied even though the fare set before them be not precisely to their liking, and the apartment suggestive of the converse of their ideas of liberty; moreover, at this, and, indeed, every stage, they should not be overcrowded. **NOTE.**—Night-feeding larvæ, if covered over with green or violet glass in the day-time, will usually begin to feed; and there was an idea, at one time, that by this means larvæ might be got to feed up in half their natural time, or else to produce unusually large imagos.

Then, again, others drop by silken threads on the approach of real or imaginary danger; a wise provision, as I believe, for their preservation against birds and also cannibals, which, of course, could not well follow

them down the thread. These, too, are most easily and best fed in air-tight cages; but, in their case, the green glass cover may be dispensed with.

It is the peculiarity (evidently in some way connected with the well-being of the creatures) of certain larvæ to make their first meal off the egg-shells, or part of them, from which they have recently emerged; others, for some inscrutable reason, shedding and devouring their first skin (and, in the case of *Dicranura vinula*, every skin they cast), before betaking themselves to their more orthodox mode of living. These should be left alone to crawl to their food; indeed, it should be put down as a rule, that stationary larvæ (especially little ones) should never be meddled with; while crawling larvæ are generally in want of some attention.

Nor must it be forgotten that many small larvæ (and big, too, for that matter) render themselves invisible by mining, entering buds, and spinning together leaves; or elude our vigilance, by closely fixing and assimilating themselves to the twigs, stalks, mid-ribs, and edges of the leaves of their food. With such experts to deal with, great circumspection is necessary in the changing process, not only in order that none of our cares may escape observation, but also that no clumsy handling may bring grief or even demolition to the tender objects of our solicitude. When larvæ are known to have this sort of propensity, it is best to supply them with as small a quantity of fresh food as is consistent with their requirements, and, in changing the same, to let all parts remain which are in the least degree suspected of, or capable of, containing occupants.

N.B.—Of course, when pellets of excrement, even though, in the case of certain neophytes, microscopic, are observable, it may be taken for granted that (always excepting the presence of interlopers introduced with the food) our "cares" are availing themselves of their diet.

Having thus touched upon some of the habits of little larvæ which act as obstacles with which the larva-rearer has to contend, let us see in what manner other habits may be turned to account in assisting us in the changing process. Firstly, sometimes a very slight jar or even a puff of breath will dislodge pretty nearly every tenant of the bunch of food,—in which case we can quickly transfer them to the jam-pot, or to the cylinder turned topside (muslin end) downwards: in the latter case, they will not be long in attaching themselves to the muslin. Secondly, a more or less sharp jar will cause certain of them to lower themselves by threads, by which they may be readily shifted on to the fresh food. Thirdly, a slight touch with a camel's-hair pencil causes others to fall perpendicularly downwards; while a fourth batch exhibit a very keen sense of the proximity of newly-gathered food, and may be left to find their own way from the stale to the fresh supply, and so on.

In conducting the changing process, I would impress upon the reader the advisability of first preparing a duplicate cage (whether jam-pot, flower-pot, or cylinder), by "sweetening" it with free currents of dry fresh air, and then stocking it with a proper quantity of appropriate food. In the second place, the contents of the cage to be operated on, live stock and all, should be turned out on a large white meat-dish, an utensil possessing prodigious advantages over the more-often-used sheet of paper, both in point of cleanly whiteness of material and also in smoothness of surface, such as would puzzle even a "lubricipede" to escape from; while a similar attempt on the part of a *geometer*, would be simply preposterous; indeed, the position of most larvæ on the glazed superficies is much that of an incipient skater down on the ice, and gladly, as a rule, do they avail themselves of the proffered twig: easily, too, may such as spin threads be lifted, by their silken appendices, with the aid of a camel's-hair brush, and transferred to the newly-prepared quarters; while those that sham death can be literally shovelled into their fresh domicile.

The old food, having been jarred over the dish, and, larvæ which fall transferred, should next be sought over for such as show no disposition to leave go their hold, and these latter may be detached by clipping off *carefully* (for if done with a "*snap*" the larvæ are jerked away) with a pair of scissors the portion of the food on which they rest, and then the larvæ, with the pieces thus cut off, should be allowed to fall gently on the fresh supply of food; for I hold that, though several kinds of larvæ do not appear to sustain injury from tender handling, it is, as a rule, neither necessary nor desirable to touch them with the fingers. Painfully undesirable, indeed, is it to handle the larvæ of *Porthesia chrysorrhæa*, and other hairy larvæ in less degree, for should their easily detached spines become applied to any tender part of our skin, an intolerable irritation is produced, which is very difficult to alleviate. Indeed, on the Continent, the hyperæsthetic symptoms produced by the larva of *Cnethocampa processionea* and *pityocampa* have been known to result even in death. The old food should not be hastily cast away, but should be put aside, under cover, for future examination, especially if, at the time of changing, we have any reason to suppose any of the larvæ are missing; and this reminds me that it is well to know the number of individuals in a brood, for one can then be certain whether they have or have not *all* been shifted. And it may also be laid down as a general rule that there is much greater chance of a successful result in the way of imagos when we are content with a moderate number of larvæ than when we collect, or retain to ourselves after egg-hunting, a large crowd of larvæ of any species.

Larvæ which in Nature hibernate, must either be stimulated by

warmth and fresh food to feed up unnaturally fast, or else, throughout the winter, must be exposed to out-door temperature. (See p. 30, *ante*).

Some hibernating larvæ are full fed before taking up their winter quarters, in which case they will of course feed no more. Others exhibit no desire for food until the spring. But not a few come forth during the warm days and evenings of winter and early spring, to practise with their jaws. These latter, when reared in captivity, require some attention on the part of the breeder. Of a certainty, however, as trees and shrubs, with the exception of evergreens, are bereft of foliage in winter, larvæ feeding ordinarily upon them, must, if they have to eat at this season, content themselves with other pabulum in the shape of non-deciduous plants, of which arbutus, laurustinus, ivy, heath, and fir are the greatest favourites, or with low-growing plants, such as forced seedlings of knotgrass (strongly recommended), chickweed and groundsel, plaitain seeds, as well as grasses and mosses; though in the case of some low-feeding larvæ, especially *geometers* (*Acidaliæ*), they are quite satisfied with nibbling during the winter the withered leaves and stems of the plants on which they have been reared; but this does not prevent their keeping a very sharp look-out for the earliest buds that appear in spring.

I may just note here that, as water, when it passes into ice, is apt to inconveniently expand our vessels, potatoes, turnips, and carrots are serviceable not only as supplying moisture in its place, but also as a provender, it being sometimes found that larvæ, on becoming aware of the presence of the tuber or roots, have availed themselves of them as food.

Hibernating hairy larvæ must, during the winter, be kept dry, or in a well-ventilated place, otherwise the damp seems to hang about their fur, and causes them to be attacked by a white fungus, which creeps through their frame, and speedily destroys them. Smooth larvæ, on the contrary, seem to require the natural dampness of the soil; most of the hibernating larvæ of the *Noctuæ* require hiding-places, quickly pining away if not freely supplied, for the purpose, with soil, dead leaves, &c. For those of *Orthosia*, *Xanthia*, *Noctua*, &c., pieces of bark, broken chip boxes, bits of flannel, &c., may be employed; while for *Agrotis* and a few others, a considerable depth of sand or fine earth is necessary.

NOTE.—It is of vast importance that during the winter all cages containing larvæ should be placed in front of a window facing the east or north-east, so that the inmates may be kept as cool as possible. As soon, however, as food can be procured, the larva should be supplied with it, and we should simultaneously endeavour to rouse them to activity with all the natural heat of sun-rays at our command.

A word or two is necessary concerning the treatment of cannibal and

viciously-disposed larvæ. Some, such as *Cosmia trapetzina*, have such depraved notions of gastronomy that they cannot always be trusted, even with their own brothers and sisters,—these must, of course, be fed separately. Some, which devour other larvæ with avidity, feed up harmoniously enough *inter se*, such are the blood-thirsty *Scopelosoma satellitia*, *Taniocampa miniosa*, and *Crocallis elingvaria*; they must not, however, be stinted in their food, for the cravings of a hungry stomach would probably render them conveniently oblivious of the ties of relationship. I suppose, too, that they should be supplied with living animal food occasionally; but it seems a horrible thing to recommend, and it is doubtful whether it is absolutely necessary. Again, certain larvæ, though not actually carnivorously disposed, but at the same time not naturally meant to live gregariously, act in a quarrelsome, snappish, and vicious manner to other larvæ crossing their path or interfering in any way with their comfort, often by their bite causing the victim to dwindle and eventually die: for these individuals, plenty of space should be provided, even if it be not necessary to place them in solitary confinement: others, not naturally cannibalistic (at least, I suppose not), would appear to assume the habit in captivity, as the account of that of *Thecla quercus* coolly demolishing the pupa of his more advanced brother seems to indicate. A weather eye must be kept open for such customers, and their propensities circumvented.

Then, again, nothing is more common with careless breeders, than for the peaceable hawk-moths, “kittens,” and other larvæ, when kept on short commons, to nibble off the caudal appendages of their relatives, an operation which I am by no means sure does not originate in their erroneously considering these excrescences to be of a vegetable character.

What a blessing to the slovenly would such larvæ as those of *Glottula pancratii* be! “They eat the leaves of the *Pancratium*, then the flowers, the seeds (if not too forward), and the root, which they attack in the last place; and, when they have demolished the bulb, which they void just as if it had been ground up by their powerful mandibles, they eat their frass; and, curious to tell, those which are nourished after this strange fashion, undergo their transformations quite as well, and produce imagoes quite as fine, as the others!!”

The furore to possess “varieties” (so called, for, under variation, are now-a-days included aberrations, malformations, and even examples of hermaphroditism), which rages among British Macro-Lepidopterists, together with a growing interest by students in all branches of Natural History touching that vexed subject—the variation of species—has opened up a vast field for enquiry as to the influences which produce these interesting freaks of nature.

“Variety-breeding,” as it has been not inaptly termed, though yet in its infancy, would appear to offer the most practical means of arriving at something like a definite solution of the mystery, and as this art comes within the province of the larva rearer, I purpose glancing at those influences which are supposed to act on the preliminary stages of insect life, to produce variation in the perfect state: to be brief, then—

Influences acting ab initio. These may be accidental or hereditary—with the former we have little to do, but they may account for the formation of certain monstrosities in which organs are multiplied, suppressed, or modified through error in the primary impulse. Hereditary influences, on the other hand, will account for a large proportion of varieties, and may, without doubt, be turned to account as well by the variety breeder of insects as by the Herefordshire farmer or the pigeon fancier, by the careful selection of parent stock with a view to peculiarities, whether structural or ornamental, being reproduced in the progeny. Of this we have *e. g.* instances in the rearing of negro varieties from parents more or less tainted with melanism; and of imperfections perpetuated, as in the frequent recurrence of individuals wanting a hind-wing, which may be noticed, even at large, in *Macaria notata*. That these are the results of hereditary influences would seem to be demonstrated by the fact that, while certain species have a tendency to vary in the above and other manners, few species are liable to the same extent of variation, and many apparently to little or even to none whatever.

Of course, it must be understood, that these hereditary peculiarities have originally been acquired through some accident, or by the force of surrounding conditions, and have, in the course of generations, become perpetuated in what is termed a variable species, or in a race of individuals presenting appreciable differences from the typical form.

Topographical influences we have now to deal with. These act, in greater or less degree, on the fauna of a district through the nature of the locality; and, among them, the soil especially would appear to exert a potency, since we find certain species varying according as they may have been reproduced, generation after generation, on a chalky, peaty, gravelly, or other soil. This cause probably acts indirectly through the vegetation of the respective districts, which doubtless undergoes some modification. Some authority speaks, too, of a chemical variety, and gives the case of *Ellophia fasciaria* and *prasinaria* as an example.

Food comes next, and whatever influence this may exert, must naturally be upon the larva; but of the fact that it does operate in various ways to modify the future imago, we have ample proof. The colour of the perfect *Tortrix viridana* is a familiar example of the power of food to

produce variation in the imago, and there are many other instances of so-called phytophagic species, races, or varieties, chiefly among the *Micro-Lepidoptera*, which might be adduced. It must not, however, be understood that, as a rule, changes of this kind are wrought in one or even in ten generations. Alteration in the colour of the larva brought about by the agency of food, may be observed in *Eupithecia absynthiata* and other species, in which there is a tendency to assume the tint of whatever flower they may be feeding upon. The larva of *T. lichenaria*, also, varies in tint with the lichens upon which it feeds, those beaten from the elm being much darker than those from the grey lichen-covered oaks; and, again, the colour of the silk of which the cocoon of the *Halias prasinana* is formed, depends on whether the larva had previously fed on oak, hazel, &c. We see, too, that species single brooded on one plant have a tendency to become double brooded on another, as in the case of *Orgyia gonostigma* reared respectively on oak and willow. And, finally, with respect to that unsatisfactory pet of the variety-breeder—"the tiger,"—many dark specimens have been attributed to the agency of coltsfoot, lettuce, and other *pabula*; but the late Peter Bouchard used to say of one of his best varieties, that he could account for it in no other way than that the beast must have lunched off some bread and cheese which had accidentally fallen into its den.

The influence of light (upon the larval and pupal stages especially), through which, it is averred, the future imago is rendered darker or paler, according as its action may have been intense and prolonged, or nearly wanting and of short duration, is certainly worth the while of the variety-breeder to test the value of. Experiments, too, have been made by the aid of decomposed light, the blue, red, or yellow ray only, being admitted to the breeding cage, through coloured glass, and certain results, though not of a very satisfactory nature, appear to have been arrived at.

Atmospheric influences which operate chiefly upon the pupa, hold a prominent place, and under them may be classed what may be denominated the "thermic" retardation or acceleration of the completion of this stage; and this, like other causes of variation, appears to affect the individuals of certain species more than those of others; for while, on the one hand, it is affirmed that the imago of *Pieris rapæ* is unaffected by the length of duration of the pupa state (the pupæ which should produce the peculiarities of the so-called spring brood doing so, whether the perfect insects emerge before or after the pupal hibernation), it is equally patent, on the other hand, that the corresponding brood of *Selenia illustraria* is considerably modified by the length of time which is passed in

the pupal state, those pupæ which hibernate producing what is termed the spring brood, those which do not, the so-called "second summer brood," the latter in nowise differing from the ordinary summer brood. Again, by similar agency, we may, as a rule, account for the greater darkness in tint and markings of many northern, especially Scotch, *Lepidoptera*, as compared with corresponding southern types; since many species double-brooded in the south, are single-brooded in the north, and others which here pass but one winter in the pupa stage are apt, in the north, to remain in that state over a second winter, or even for a longer period. Dampness and dryness, too, may be added as atmospheric influences acting chiefly on the pupa. Experiments with the aid of an ice well may be made.

Glancing back, therefore, we see that the would-be variety-breeder has the option of certain lines of action towards the end he has in view. First and foremost, he may, by judicious selection of the parent stock, enhance his future chances of success, if not in the first, at any rate, in succeeding generations: he may, if he be patient and of a peripatetic turn, avail himself of locality or soil; or he may bring to his aid the influences of food, light, heat, cold, moisture, &c.

Variety breeding is a legitimate art, but those ingenious delusions which may be classed as *post mortem* varieties, and which are not unfrequently indulged in by the unscrupulous, cannot be too strongly condemned—I allude to such morbid practices as imitating varieties, or even rarities, by the aid of the paint brush and wasted talent, the manufacture of hermaphrodites, the clumsy artifice of dyeing by saffron and other agents, the conversion of greens into orange, bleaching by exposure to strong light or the fumes of sulphur or chlorine,—impostures which are only mentioned to put the young entomologist on his guard, and which may generally be pretty easily detected by means of the relaxing jar or a strong lens.

The ailments of larvæ have been so little studied that, were it not that the subject of "Management" seems to demand that attention should at least be called to them, I would prefer to omit them altogether from these notes. For if we except those mysterious maladies, muscardine and cholérine, concerning which untold volumes have been written, with the minimum of practical result, caterpillar nosology can scarcely be said to be even in its infancy.

Direct injuries, such as mutilations, wounds, bruises, &c., resulting from accidents, bites of other larvæ, attacks of enemies, unlucky knocks by the beating stick, or otherwise received, are not necessarily fatal, and to the lovers of malformations, may even be productive of cherishable

abnormities in the future imago. We can do little more than leave them to take their chance, placing them out of the way of further harm, and stopping any flow of exuding lymph by the application of powdered chalk to the wound, but of course the scab formed afterwards will interfere with the next moult, so that whenever that event comes about, the larva (if worth saving) may be assisted by means of warmth and moisture and the mechanical measures mentioned, further on, under "moulting sickness."

Stings of Ichneumons, &c., come next, and when the eggs of the parasites are not too deeply deposited, and of course before they have hatched, it is often no difficult job to destroy them either by crushing them with finely pointed scissors or pliers, or to remove them by the aid of a darning needle, it being sometimes necessary to steady the larva by holding it gently between the finger and thumb of the free hand; but I see no reason why the subject (especially if it be of an irritable temperament) should not be placed under the influence of pure (not methylated) chloroform, since larvæ are readily affected by, and readily recover from the effects of, this agent. N.B.—When stung, the hairs generally fall off.

Frost Bite. It is well known that larvæ, which have been so stiffly frozen that they might have been easily broken, have afterwards recovered. The chief thing to be remembered in the treatment of such cases, is that the thawing should be effected very gradually—rapid thawing being dangerous; the best thing I can suggest is to cover them up in snow; we should remember that prevention is better than cure, and that the larvæ of species which naturally inhabit warm situations, cannot bear, and ought to be protected from, any great degree of frost.

Suffocation. This of course happens whenever the passage of air through the spiracles becomes obstructed, the most common cause being submersion, for larvæ have an unaccountable propensity to commit suicide in the water vessels of breeding cages, whenever they can get a chance; still, after being immersed for even ten or twelve hours, their case is not utterly hopeless, for though they may appear bloated and stiffened with water, yet if they be gently dried on a piece of blotting paper, kept in motion the while, and exposed to the sun, the chances are that, if they be not too far gone, they will recover; and, for aught I know to the contrary, the school-boy's old remedy of resuscitating drowned flies by covering them up with salt and exposing them to the rays of the sun, might prove efficacious, *only* I have my doubts as to the effects of damp salt on larval surfaces.

Starvation. This may depend on defective supply of food, or on the use of an improper diet; or the presence of excess or deficiency of light,

as the case may be, may cause the larva to sulk and pine away. The treatment is, generally speaking, obvious enough, but sometimes we find larvæ feeding well enough for a time on some particular kind of food, and then their appetite unaccountably falls off: under such circumstances, change of diet should be tried, ventilation, &c., should be attended to, light (and even in some cases, rays of the sun) should be admitted; rinsing the food in water, or exposing it to a shower does good: and, as many larvæ have a predilection for sweets, the food may be washed with syrup and allowed to dry, or sugar or treacle may be added to the contents of the water vessel, with a view to imparting a flavor to the food; in the latter case, however, we must be careful that the mixture does not become mouldy or acetous.

Surfeit. Many larvæ, especially such as are large and smooth, when permitted to gorge themselves with too juicy food, have a tendency, particularly when about three-quarters grown, to become dropsical and die. The remedy would appear to be to feed them on dry mature leaves gathered from bleak exposed situations, and moisture should be excluded from the cage.

Cramp. A night passed on a cold surface, is often sufficient to paralyse the pro-legs of larvæ, especially of such as are young and tender; under these circumstances, they are unable to retain their hold when placed upon their food: perhaps the best plan is to put them on some such surface as a piece of blotting paper, in a temperate situation, fresh leaves of the food-plant being strewn about within reach of the sufferer.

Low Fever. Undoubtedly larvæ suffer from a contagious disease very analogous to this. Some species are more liable to it than others, and it appears to be very fatal among the members of any affected batch, though apparently not communicable from one to another, and distinct, species. It is doubtless engendered by bad feeding, ill ventilation, proximity of decaying vegetable or animal matter, &c.; the indications therefore are that these should be removed as early as possible, and the healthy larvæ should be kept separate from those which show the slightest signs of the disease. The use of a small quantity of Condry's disinfecting fluid in the water vessel, too, could do no possible harm, and might prove beneficial. Somebody has suggested that immersion in cold water has a good effect in this disorder.

Irritability. Some larvæ become ill-tempered during, and for a short time after, their moults, when the skin appears to be very sensitive; or this irritable state may be due to the recent sting of ichneumons, the presence of *acari*, &c. Larvæ thus affected should be kept as little crowded as possible, and, indeed, if necessary, confined in separate cages.

Moulting Sickness. Larvæ of some species, even in confinement, appear to experience but little difficulty in casting off their effete skins; others, on the contrary, and of these chiefly those of the Butterflies, Sphinges, *Bombyces* and *Pseudo-bombyces*, apparently naturally undergo a comparatively tedious and painful process of ecdysis; the appetite of the caterpillar thus affected forsakes it, it frequently seeks some retired spot, and, having spun a lesser or greater number of silken threads, attaches the hooks of the pro-legs thereto, and then, after the lapse of a longer or shorter interval, bursts the now useless covering which invests it, and makes its exit. During all this time the larva should, as a rule, be left to its own resources, but sometimes it may be observed that it is incapable of freeing itself, in which case, assistance must be rendered, before prostration takes place, by slitting the old skin with a couple of needles carefully manipulated, cutting, by very fine pointed scissors, the skin round any scab which may have been formed over a wound, and pegging down the skin in cases where the pro-legs may have become detached from the transverse silken threads, assisting meanwhile the operation by moisture and warmth. It is very important to discriminate between the above sickness and cases of starvation, since the treatment required in the latter case is necessarily the converse of the above, and a conclusion respecting this may safely be arrived at by attention to the following:—In the starved larva the capital segment is comparatively of hydrocephalic proportions—it is, in the moulting larva, very small; the skin is plump and tense in the latter, while that of the former hangs loosely; the silken transverse threads too are absent in the victim of starvation, which also exhibits a restless desperation in searching for food to appease its hunger, sometimes snapping at pieces of frass and other substances, and as hastily casting them aside; the moulting larva, on the other hand, remains stationary.

Diarrhœa. This is generally caused by improper feeding with too juicy or too relaxing food; in such cases, dry stunted foliage gathered from bleak exposed situations, mature leaves, astringents, such as dark-coloured oak leaves, madder, &c., should be tried with such larvæ as will partake of them, or the food may be sprinkled with powdered madder, chalk, &c. The converse of this complaint requires to be treated with the young, juicy, immature leaves of the food-plant, and, in certain cases, mostly among the *Noctuæ*, the administration of lettuce and other natural purgatives will have a salutary effect.

Fungus. This is particularly apt to attack hairy larvæ, especially such as hibernate, the subject—having doubtless first become unhealthy from confinement in a damp, ill-ventilated atmosphere—is attacked by a species of *Oidium*, after which it is generally “all over.” I do not know

how far the use of hyposulphurous acid or the hyposulphites might be applicable, but their effect might be tried. The natural preventive is, doubtless, exposure to the sun-rays, and most collectors must have noticed that the hibernating larvæ of *Arctia*, *Spilosoma*, and others, take every opportunity of sunning themselves, as if for the purpose of drying their coats; when there is no sun visible, currents of dry air will, probably, be the best remedy.

Observation.

Compared with the other stages, the larval state claims our attention, not only as being the most interesting disguise of the future insect, but because in this condition, all its growth takes place by assimilating to itself a certain amount of vegetable sustenance. The quantity of food consumed by the larvæ of many species is very moderate, and their full growth is soon attained, while other species eat an astonishing quantity, and their slow growth seems quite inadequate to their insatiable appetites and prolonged larval existence; they seem as though appointed to defoliate trees and plants. In this respect, the smallest species, especially when gregarious, sometimes exceed in mischief the larger kinds.

Few persons of ordinary intelligence see a caterpillar without feeling an interest in its beauty of colour, its singularity of structure, or the delicate texture of its skin. Some have skins of velvety softness, others of shining brilliancy, while some species are rough and shagreened; some are partially hairy, others densely clothed with hairs. But there is, unfortunately, with ignorant rustics, too frequently a temptation to crush the unoffending worm, especially if of unusual dimensions; and, doubtless, under the vague idea of a "locust," many a rare and beautiful form has been ruthlessly destroyed.

If we turn to the *Diurni* we find in *P. Machaon* a beautiful example of a smooth-skinned larva, furnished with forked tentacles protruded at will behind the head. In the larva of *Apatura Iris*, we behold the two lobes of the head extended upwards, and produced into two occipital horns, its body tapering behind to a pointed and slightly divided tail; and very suggestive of a slug in form.

In the genus *Vanessa*, and some others, the larvæ are encased in defensive armour, which, no doubt, appears formidable generally to the eyes of birds, their backs and sides bristling with several rows of branched spines, a perfect *chevaux de frise*. *Thecla Betulæ*, with its front segments sloped and flattened above towards its diminutive head, appears like a limpid green slug adhering to a leaf. And the popular idea of a woodlouse has often been attributed to the shape of *Lycæna Alexis* and its

congeners ; indeed, so contrary are they to a beginner's notions of what a butterfly larva should be, that he may, likely enough, refer them to some other order.

In the larger larvæ of the *Sphingidæ*, we see them with a curved horn, directed backwards, like a veritable tail. The caterpillar of *S. ligustri*, represented in the annexed figure, has a smooth curved horn ; the horn of the Death's head moth is rough and has a double curve ; those of the *Smerinthi* are rough and straighter than those of the Sphinges ; and another variation in the *Smerinthi* is the form of the head, which is triangular in shape. *Chærocampa elpenor* has its front segments rapidly tapered towards its small head, and it can elongate them at will, reminding one of the prehensile trunk of an elephant, or it is able to contract them in such a manner as to give it a hunch-backed look. These larger hawk moth caterpillars are familiar enough ; but it is not without some misgivings that the soft whitish maggots of the *Sesiidæ* are for the first time accepted as the early stage of the clear-wings.

Then in the tribes of hairy larvæ that succeed, what variety of arrangement is to be noticed in the tufts ! and it is strange also, to find this hairiness suddenly appearing in a few species among the *Noctuæ*, and even among the *Geometræ* (*Aplasta ononaria*), not to mention the *Plumes*. In the larvæ of *Dasychira fascelina* and *pudibunda*, we see bundles of hairs so disposed as to look like veritable shaving brushes on their backs, and a longer tail-like tuft behind, while *Orygia gonostigma* has, in addition, on each side in front, a long whisk of hairs, with clubbed tips, standing out like horns. A large number of genera amongst the *Nocturni*, are hairy, and we may mention *Arctia Caja* as an example of a larva having raised wart-like tubercles, from which hairs diverge in all directions, so completely as to hide its body beneath them. Others are densely clothed with parallel hairs, growing in various directions, a familiar instance of which is known in *Bombyx quercus*.

The genus *Psyche* shows us larvæ inhabiting cases made of bits of heather, stems of grasses, particles of leaves, &c., &c., and the movements of such strange objects are very curious ; only one or two segments of the occupant can be seen, even when it is in an active condition.

In the *Drepanidæ* the hinder pair of legs are wanting, and an elongated tail substituted. The genus *Dicranura* gives striking examples of double or forked tails, *Vinula* is a familiar instance, quaint, and grotesque, with its air of ridiculous anger when alarmed or its dignity offended, at such times, it erects its head and tail, protruding the fleshy filaments telescopically from them, then raising itself to its full height and jerking to and fro the thick anterior part of its body. An ominously threatening creature is the larva of *Stauropus fagi*, especially when alarmed: its front segments are furnished with remarkably long angular jointed legs, which it plays with a tremulous motion, and its hinder segments are enormously inflated and erect, and terminate in two filamentous tails, making one hesitate before touching such a scorpion-like object when met with for the first time. *Notodonta zic-zac* is a very striking form, when at rest its

head and tail are erect, and its body bent and arched; and this curious posture is rendered more striking by a hump behind, and two long curved ones on the back. *Lophopteryx camelina* is remarkable for having, in addition to a slight hump behind, two short fleshy projections, bearing two or three hairs, and its favourite position in repose is to bend back its head and front segments, and elevate the hinder ones into a curve that seems exhaustive of muscular power.

In the group of *Noctuina*, the great bulk of species have smooth skins, and are, in a general way, tolerably uniformly cylindrical, yet they present great variety of proportion between length and thickness. The few hairy larvæ among them are remarkable as being exceptions to the general rule; these occur with *Dipthera Orion*, as represented in the annexed cut, also with *S. venosa* and among the members of the genus *Acronycta*, of which *A. aceris* and *leporina* are perhaps the most strikingly hirsute examples, though the most curious in the group is undoubtedly *A. alni*, the larva of which is provided with two long clubbed hairs on each segment.

Amongst the *Geometræ*, with ten legs, we see some very remarkable forms, distinct from any of those previously mentioned; in most instances the anterior and posterior segments being much shorter than those of the middle, which are not furnished with legs. Some are very elongated, as *O. sambucaria*, others short and twig-like with prominences, as *R. cratægata*, which, by-the-bye, has the exceptional number of fourteen legs. In *P. syringaria*, we have a larva of great singularity with two pairs of projections on his back, the hinder ones

elongated and curved, so that it generally keeps itself in a close loop-like form. The larvæ of *Selenia* closely resemble thorny twigs, the hinder pair of the anterior legs having much the appearance of thorns, the humps and swellings behind favouring the resemblance. *Geometra papilionaria* presents a larva with forked head, and a fork on the next segment, and having humps, and a shagreened skin; and *Phorodesma bajularia* clothes itself with particles of leaves in such a manner as to entirely disguise its larval appearance.

We have seen how larvæ have the power in many ways of warding off their enemies; they may put their trust simply in faith, like a missionary among savages, or strike terror with horrid forms and gesticulations, as the Chinese do—they can wriggle like an eel, leap like a salmon, swing like a Leotard, or run like a Deerfoot upon occasion, they play at whoop, only they do not halloo—sometimes they make excavations in wood, earth, or other material, like veritable sappers and miners. They take advantage of their forms and colours to mimic various objects, or they dress themselves up like jacks-in-the-green—a few, like the celebrated Slingsby, who vanquished the snapping turtle in the dreary dismal swamp, are clothed with formidable armour; others, especially the *Noctuæ*, eject a disgusting fluid from their mouths,—*quid?* The safety of the larvæ of many Butterflies depends on something objectionable in their flavour; *P. Machaon* emits a pungent acid odour, and poultry have a great dislike, worse luck, to the caterpillars of the common “whites.” Frogs retire in disgust from *Abraxas grossulariata*. Some gregarious larvæ are protected by their webs—and, as for hairy larvæ, they are evidently of too indigestible a nature to suit the maw of any bird, unless it be that of the cuckoo, which has the reputation of a partiality for them.

To save repetition, cocoons, &c., will be considered, further on, when we come to discuss the chrysalis state, for, although they are certainly the work of the larva, they are, nevertheless, constructed for the special benefit of the pupa.

What to observe.—For a complete history of species, it is, of course, necessary to begin one’s observation with the exit from the egg: Do all the batch come out simultaneously, or at intervals?—at what part of the egg is the exit made—the top or side—by a big or small hole—*i. e.*, does the egg-shell remain tolerably whole, or much shattered? Then, again, is the egg-shell eaten for the first meal? Then the colour and form of the young larva should be noted; for some species, such as *C. immanata* and *russata*, may be seen more easily to be distinct then, than at any other time of their larval life; also whether it has bristles which may

afterwards fall off, or horns or ears (as in *Dicranura vinula*) which may afterwards sink into the body. Of course, young larvæ, like many other young things, have big heads, but a meal or two will cause the body to assume its proper proportions, unless the head is to remain strikingly bigger than the next segment. In a general way, therefore, this feature need not to be noted as any peculiarity.

Next we observe the change of colour produced, it may be, by the food, for young skins easily show what is going on inside, and generally, at first, present a greenish blush till time thickens them. Then as to how they feed, &c.; how they behave when touched; whether they fall off, curl up, fling themselves about, jump backwards, try to bite, drop by a thread, sham death, &c., &c. And a very important element in giving a life-like idea of the larva, is its *attitude*, whether at rest or in motion; whether it rests at length, or bent or curled, and if the latter, whether curled sideways or in the same plane, and if so, into how many coils? the time taken in attaining their full growth, which will also be influenced by proper feeding, for some will collapse if they can't get enough—others will starve on, and grow again when they are supplied.

Then as regards hibernation—if so, when begun, when ended? how many spring *moult*s? there is generally one, but sometimes more.

A large number of larvæ, which in their earlier stages are comparatively sober in colour, only array themselves in brilliant coats at their last moult, among these may be mentioned *Lycæna Ægon*, *C. flavicornis*, *A. australis*, *T. rubricosa*, *E. nigra*, *C. exoleta*, &c. On the other hand, a considerable number amongst the *Noctuæ* are more gaily dressed in youth, and take to more quiet colours as they approach maturity: some which have but little variety of markings through their whole larval career, yet entirely change their colour, as from pale green to dark brown, or *vice versâ*. The structure, as well as the colours and markings of the larva, after every change of skin, should therefore be carefully noticed, as well as its habits and customs, which are often peculiarly interesting, together with its food-plants and the effect of any experiments made with them. When these have been done, and figures of them have been taken, we may congratulate ourselves on knowing something about the natural history of *Lepidoptera*.

How to describe.—Suppose we have a larva before us awaiting, or, as unfortunately is generally the case, trying, either by sullen immovability, or by frantic racing, to avoid, description, it will, as a rule, be found best to give *first*, its length, bulk, and form, and, *secondly*, its colour and ornamentation; otherwise, there is danger in many cases of the colours getting put (grammatically) upon the wrong parts.

State then first the length, both at rest and in motion—if many examples can be examined, the average length; if the larva is contractile; then the bulk in proportion to the length, whether stout or slender; for instance, one calls the larva of *Triphaena orbona* plump, but tolerably proportionate to its length in bulk, while *pronuba* is more decidedly stout, and *Gonoptera libatrix* slender; then give the shape of the head—whether globular, flattened, or square—whether notched or bifid, whether retractile or exerted. After that comes the outline or form, and this may be taken from two views—first from above, and then sideways; and must be set down as uniform, swollen in any part or tapering, cylindrical or flattened; some cases admit of a single word describing much in a small space, such as spindle-shaped, or, if liked better, fusiform; in others, it must be done more at length, mentioning whether the segmental folds are deeply marked or otherwise; next in due order, plates, humps, and then the shape of the humps, whether globular, pyramidal, wedge-shaped, single, or in pairs, &c., the ridges on certain segments, and also their position, whether dorsal, lateral, or ventral; then appendages, mostly anal, but not always so; in the case of regularly hairy or tufted larvæ the point of hairiness, with the position, length, nature and distribution of the hairs, whether bearing short bristles or longer hairs; then will come the texture of the skin—translucent, soft, smooth, glossy, shagreened, folded, wrinkled, or puckered, and whether the creature is tough to the touch or pulpy; with the usual warts or dots, whether obsolete or distinct.

A few words are here necessary. Firstly, Lepidopterous larvæ all fall under the general description of being divided by indentation into thirteen segments, whereof beginners must remember that the head is number one; although, in some descriptions copied from old writers, it seems as if the head were excluded from the reckoning, and the number of segments set down as twelve only. In a general way, too, it is not very wrong to say that larvæ are long and cylindrical—so many species are really of this form that it may fairly be taken as the type. But, of course, when we come to pass any great number of species in review, we find their variety, both in form and ornamentation, to be wonderful.

Secondly, the tubercular dots amongst the larvæ of the Noctuina and others, from each of which grows a single hair or bristle, are evidently organs of feeling, and their arrangement as to situation and number can be best studied from the larva of either *Agrotis segetum*, *Gortyna flavago*, or *Dasypolia templi*, in all of which they are conspicuous as horny warts, and, when once they are understood, we shall find their representatives in a vast number of species in each division of *Lepidoptera*, that is to say, the hairs, however minute, will be found, if carefully looked for, in similar

positions ; so that whatever may induce a note on them, it will not be at all necessary to allude to the position they occupy, which should be borne in mind by all Entomologists.

Thirdly, where there is any departure from the usual number of legs, that is a most important thing to be mentioned, and should come very early in the description ; for, unless anything is said to the contrary, we assume in the case of the larvæ of butterflies and thick-bodied moths, and “Pearls,” that they have sixteen legs a-piece, and in the case of the *geometers* only ten legs ; deviations from this rule ought, therefore, to be carefully noted, and also cases of imperfectly developed legs, or legs changed into something else, as in *D. vinula*, &c.

Fourthly, it must be remembered that the anal segment is apparently sub-divided on its upper surface by a transverse indentation or skinfold, which is in fact the hinge, so to speak, of the anal flap, and has often been misrepresented, even in our own day, in pictorial works, as an extra segment, whether for want of knowledge of the external anatomy of a lepidopterous larva or from careless haste, it is hardly possible to decide ; but the numerous mistakes of this nature that exist in otherwise well-executed engravings, from whatever cause, are much to be regretted.

And lastly, the third, fourth, and thirteenth segments have no spiracles, and those on the second and twelfth are placed a little higher than the others, are generally a trifle larger, and of a more narrow oval shape, so that as this arrangement exists in all, it is only necessary to describe their colour, unless those on the middle segments should happen to be circular, a circumstance worthy of note.

The bulk, form, proportions, structure, texture, and organs, of the larva having been duly discussed, then comes the—oftentimes puzzling—task of setting forth its colours, and their arrangement.

And first we may notice, that, in most cases, the larva has some colour or other predominating on the back—sometimes reaching down to the spiracles, sometimes not so far—this then should be taken first, as the *ground* colour ; then comes the colour of the head, with the lines, if any, on it ; and, starting from these, come the lines in so very many cases running through part or the whole of the dorsal region. The principal of these is the dorsal line, sometimes merely seen as a pulsating vessel through the skin, sometimes as a line or stripe of colour in the skin itself. It is often edged with darker thin lines, and in young larvæ these lines are distinct though close together, and are then called a double dorsal line ; then where the back slopes decidedly to the side, comes the sub-dorsal line, and below that the broader stripe, at the top of which the spiracles are usually situated, termed the spiracular.

The accompanying cut will give a good idea of the position of the sub-dorsal and spiracular lines. These, as well as the dorsal line, may be bordered by others, or the space between them may be filled up by similar lines, or they may be interrupted, and appearing as continuous lines only on the front, the middle or the hinder segments, and be seen only as dots or streaks on the others; still they are to be made out more or less distinctly in the majority of species, and greatly assist one as land-marks, so to speak, in mapping out the surface of the skin to be described.

Lines—stripes (thick lines) and bands (extra broad stripes) are easily put out of the way, however many they may be, in comparison with *patterns*, which puzzle one immensely for want of words to describe their outlines and positions; still, if the position of what should be the dorsal and sub-dorsal lines is well kept in view, the place also of the fold between the segments noticed, and the existence more or less apparent of the (trapezoidal) dots or warts not forgotten, it will often be found that very intricate patterns will resolve themselves into comparatively simple elements; and if their outlines can be compared to any tolerably familiar object (such as a pear, a kite, a lozenge, a diamond, a boat, a V, or a W), a better notion can then be more easily given than by using a much greater number of words in order to achieve the same end in a round-about way: the direction in which these patterns point should not be forgotten; as also in the case of slanting streaks or dashes. The back having been more or less successfully got rid of, then come the spiracles, their shape and colour, followed by the colour and markings, if any, on the belly; sometimes this is plain enough, at others it is prettily decorated with lines; and in the case of *Melanthia ocellata*, there is a V-like pattern as distinctly as the back; the colour of the legs also must not be forgotten, and may be given in connection with that part of the body to which they most

assimilate. The humps, &c., are to be distinguished from the part of the body on which they are placed at the time it is being described.

In many closely allied species, the utmost care and attention should be given to the back, and more especially to the sub-dorsal region, for it is there that the distinctive and special characters are found, and without this close investigation, we should not be able to discriminate between many species of the genus *Noctua*; and, again, the genus *Leucania* is another which demands the closest scrutiny on this region, as these larvæ have all an uniform design on them of a certain number of lines and stripes, excepting, of course, *turca* and *phragmitidis*, which appear to have no claim to the genus in the larval condition.

Preservation.

The art of preserving the skins of larvæ has, of late years, made rapid strides towards perfection, both at home and abroad. By the recent process, hairs and appendages remain intact, the colour and markings are happily secured, and even in the matter of form, considerable advancement has been achieved.

Anybody can understand that great care and patience are required, that the occupation is not without personal inconvenience, and that more or less frequent disappointments must occur. It is therefore not to be wondered at that those who have devoted themselves to the practice of this art, look forward to remuneration, and, pursuing it for profit, they cannot be blamed for keeping their secrets to themselves.

The following method I tried many years ago with tolerable success:—The larva was first killed by immersion in spirits of wine, then the contents were extracted through the anal orifice, by means of a crochet hook, or darning needle, with the point turned round whilst red-hot; after that the skin was inflated, and kept so with a fine blowpipe inserted and secured in the above-mentioned aperture, care being taken not to distend it too much, and at the same time it was dried as quickly as possible before a fire. Were I again to make an attempt, a metal chamber heated by gas would be substituted for the fire. Fine sand has also been employed to keep the skin distended until dry; by this means the form may be better secured, but the process is not so speedy, or otherwise desirable. Parts that have faded during the operation, may be tinted by the application of colour, on a camel's-hair brush of the smallest size, to the interior of the skin. The object should then be mounted on an artificial leaf, the more closely resembling one of its natural food-plant, of course, the better.

THE CHRYsalis STATE.

“*Sans teeth, sans eyes, sans taste, sans everything.*”

SHAKESPEARE.

Collecting.

If the chrysalides of *Lepidoptera* appear, to the uninitiated, to be dull, stupid-looking things, there are, at any rate, many beautiful and curious exceptions to the rule; among the butterflies, for instance, we meet with some gracefully angulated forms, resplendent with burnished gold, fully accounting for the derivation of the word “chrysalis:” while that of *Nemeobius Lucina* almost anticipates the hairy pupæ presently to be mentioned, and is, besides, ornamented with a row of black dots on each segment. The pitcher-handle-like proboscis sheath of the pupa of *S. convolvuli* is a curiosity in its way, and so, too, is the proboscis sheath of *S. ligustri* [see fig.] which is unattached to the body of the pupa; the tufts of hair in the case of certain *Bombyces*, the funny ventral appendages at the ends of the wing-sheaths of the puparium in *Dianthæcia* and *Cucullia*, observable also in *Plusia*, but not so strongly marked, and exaggerated in a grotesque manner in some of the *Hydrocampidæ*; the delicate blue bloom on *Cosmia*, *Mania*, *Catocala*, *Cidaria psitticata*, and *miata*, as well as on *Halias prasinana*; the old larva-skin attached, tail-fashion, to the comical squat pupa of *Pericallia syringaria*, the green and orange-red colours of the *Theræ*, and the wonderful variety of tints and markings in the chrysalides of *Eupithecia*, pointed out by the Rev. H. Harpur Crewe, and the quaint hairy-looking articles, which will by and by turn out veritable plume moths, are all more or less interesting and instructive; and, indeed, to anybody who will take the trouble and look at them carefully, there is vast variety, even in the common brown pupæ of so many species—their heads, shoulders, wings, abdomens, all slope at such different angles, or take up such different proportions of the whole figure of the pupæ. And, again, there is much to be seen in the spikes at their tails—blunt, sharp, bifid, hooked,—in fact, one can give no notion of their variety without specimens or figures.

Then, again, though some pupæ are quite unattached, *e. g.*, the lively *Macrogaster*, which, probably for the wise end of escaping the effects of

floods on the one hand and browsing cattle on the other, is endowed with the power of travelling up and down the stems which encase it; the pupa, too, of *H. lupulinus* can move itself from end to end of the elongated gallery in which it is enclosed; others, thanks to the supply of silk and ingenuity possessed by the larvæ, are curiously attached to surfaces. Thus those of the *Nymphalidæ*, *Vanessidæ*, and of the *Pterophori*, are suspended by their anal segments, as represented in the cut; but

though Tom Hood, in one of his whimsical year books, draws an unmistakeable *Noctua* pupa hanging by its tail, head downwards from a tree, no notice has yet appeared of such a monster in any veracious periodical; others, in addition, have the further support of a silken girth, as the *Papilionidæ*. This is well shown in the chrysalis of *P. Machaon*, as represented in the annexed cut; it is also observable in some of the *Lycanidæ*, the quaint truncated butterfly-like little pupæ of *Ephyra*, among *Geometrina*, and of *Rivula* among the *Deltoides*; again to the larva is due the wonderful insect architecture displayed in the construction of cocoons, or the rudiments of them; sometimes only a few silken threads, attaching together leaves or rubbish, serve as a protection for the contained pupa, as with *Pericallia*, *Abraxas*, *Angerona*, *Ennomos*, &c.; the chrysalis of *Uropteryx* is suspended by a few threads in a sort of cradle; more or less slight cocoons formed among mosses contain the pupæ of *Lithosia*, *Endromis*, *Tephrosia*, *Geometra*, &c., and, similarly amongst leaves, *Tethea*, *Cymatophora*, *Amphipyra*, the *Botydæ*, *Pyrausta*, *Hyppæna*, *Herminia*, &c. Some of these slight cocoons are perhaps more beautiful than any others, from the net-work manner in which the silken threads are woven; *Acidalia subsericeata* and *Sterrha sacraria* are examples of this, but *P. porrectella*, though these notes do not include *Tineina*, is as beautiful as any. It is among the *Bombycina* that we find, above ground, the most perfectly formed cocoons, and here there is much variation; first in density, those of the *Liparidæ* being gauzy web-like affairs, *Clostera*, *Porthesia*, the tigers, ermines, &c., more or less mixed up with hairs—a peculiar sulphury substance enters into the composition of that of *Clisiocampa neustria*, and débris of wood into those of the internal feeding *Cossus* and *Zenzera*. Then, in the next place, as we get to tougher material, we find considerable variety of form; thus the cocoons of *Odonestis* and *Gastropacha* are elongated and somewhat fusiform, the little cocoons of *Nola* approach the shape of a boat, that of *Saturnia* is

pear-shaped, with a singular valvular opening, the Eggars have smooth egg-shaped cocoons, thence their name, and, lastly, the cases of the *Dicranuridæ* are of great hardness, that of *vinula* presenting the appearance of a half-egg, whether made out of bark, or fragments of a stone wall, or a painted door, should the larva choose to leave its tree, and betake itself to a neighbouring building for making up; that of *bicuspis*, when we get it out, bears a striking resemblance to a Brazil-nut. In other divisions than the *Bombyces* we find examples of well-formed cocoons; thus the *Anthrocereæ* are furnished with neat glazed cocoons, elongated at each end; those of the *Sesiæ*, are miniatures of *Cossus*; *Acronycta*, *Symira*, *Habrostola*, and others among the *Noctuæ*, have a more or less tough and silken covering, *Scoria dealbata* is enclosed in a shuttle-shaped cocoon, *Halias* in a boat-shaped one; the *Hesperidæ* are enclosed in a fusiform abode formed by drawing together the two edges of the middle and lower part of a blade of grass, while *Phorodesma*, *Pysche*, and some of the *Hydrocampidæ* content themselves with the old habitation of the larva.

This brings us to mother earth, where for subterranean pupæ we shall have to dig (*infra*) on speculation. Some, as *Xylocampa*, *Bankia*, *Metrocampa*, *Eupisteria*, are found on the surface, others, as *Rusina*, a little beneath it; the bulk are situated at a depth varying from an inch and a half to three inches in depth, while a few lie buried at a very considerable depth, as in the case of *A. Atropos*, which makes a great smooth chamber, big enough to hold a large hen's egg, *P. cassinea*, some of the *Agrotes*, *Calocampa*, *T. populeti*, &c., but the depth of all pupæ will depend much on the nature of the soil. In the construction of these earthern cocoons, there is of course great similarity, though there is much variation in the relative quantity of silk used to bind the earth; in some instances the former being barely discernible, and, as a consequence, the cocoon being proportionately brittle. Thus, for example, the sarcophagus of *C. xerampelina* is of an exceedingly delicate nature, while that of *Cucullia* is of a much firmer texture. The cocoon of *P. trepida* is very tough but not always coated with earth, so also are many of the Prominents, *e. g.*, *chaonia*, *dodonæa*, and *dromedarius*; and that of *P. margaritalis* much resembles these, though of course in miniature.

And now, having considered the chrysalides themselves, their modes of attachment, and their cocoons, the next step will be to look for them. Pupa-hunting may be pursued at seasons when other modes of collecting are slack; it is also a capital auxiliary to "breeding;" for the females of many *Bombyces* and *Pseudo-bombyces*, not readily obtainable by other methods, may thus be procured, and used for attracting purposes.

The best time for pupa-hunting is from the middle of August to the end of October, or an interval corresponding to the lull in collecting

the perfect insect, which succeeds the summer season and precedes the appearance of the ivy bloom. At this period of the year may be met with, in favoured localities, great numbers of pupæ, chiefly of common species, with here and there perhaps something worthier the expenditure of time and energy: among the pupæ of the better order may be mentioned *X. conspicillaris*, where it occurs, *A. alni*, at alder, *C. occularis*, between leaves or under moss, towards the end of August; *C. ridens*, under bark, among rubbish, &c., in September; *D. bicuspis*, on birch trunks in the South, on alder in the North, rarely above two feet from the ground; *Notodonta trepida*, *dodonæa*, and *chaonia*, at the foot of oaks, and *palpina*, *dictæa*, &c., at poplars and willows or under sods, in September and October; *E. fuscantaria* and *Eup. fraxinata*, under moss on ash trees and *C. xerampelina*, also at ash, but under the ground; and, in its fenny haunts, *P. Machaon* abounds in September; other months are by no means so productive; in April, *H. ruberaria* may be met with under loose bark; in June, *G. quadra* on pales near lichen-covered trees, *M. abjecta* under stones, clods, &c., *B. abietaria* in fir woods; and in July, *A. Iris*, suspended from willow or neighbouring objects, the *Pterophori* attached to the stems and leaves of their food-plants, &c.

The localities which are most productive of pupæ, are open spots with trees few and far between; our coasts, sand-hills, heaths, parks, fields, clearings in fir or other woods, lanes, and borders of streams, are the most likely places to select from; and the nature of the soil should be taken into account, clay being the most unfavourable, while gravel, chalk, limestone with a thin layer of superimposed earth, greensand, sand, light loamy soil, maiden mould, leaf mould, and the material formed from the dead spicular foliage of fir trees, afford us the best chances of success.

The situations in which pupæ occur are from the topmost twig of the stateliest tree down to some half-dozen inches beneath the surface of the earth, and even under water. We will begin at the top and work downwards: firstly, then,

The leaves of trees are often spun together, and sometimes attached by a few threads to twigs in their vicinity by larvæ when preparing for their succeeding transformation. Thus *Clostera*, *Drepana*, *Cilix*, *Stauropus*, *Cymatophora*, *Abraxas*, and *Pericallia* are examples of the kind; now it follows, that if any stray gauzy silk should connect the leaves so spun together with adjoining twigs, these same leaves will, as a matter of probability, be the last to fall in autumn; again, as all the leaves do not drop simultaneously, the odds will be against two connected leaves falling at the same time, consequently, if we visit localities known to produce the above species or others with similar tendencies at "the fall of the leaf," we may, by an examination of the little agglomerations remaining among the

twigs, possess ourselves of the desired prizes. In my garden, a few years since, a lime tree was smothered with small clusters of dead leaves, each of which contained a pupa of *Orgyia antiqua*. But even these will yield to the elements in time, and then the only likely place to discover them will be among the heaps of fallen foliage.

The twigs and branches are not unfrequently favoured by the pupæ of certain species, the more generally chosen situation being between the forks, and underneath the larger branches, as with *Porthesia*, *Hemerophila*, *Nola*, &c.

The trunks of trees are tenanted in several ways. Outside, in the nooks and chinks, with the webs and cocoons of *Bombyces* artfully assimilated to the nature of the bark; from the light gauzy web of *Psilura* on oak to the stony hard cases of the *Dicranuridæ*, all so comparatively easy of detection after the escape of the moth, but difficult—in some cases very difficult—to find before that occurrence.

Loose bark, wherever it occurs, is very apt to harbour its Lepidopterous tenants; for the proper working of this the lever figured at p. 20 will be found very serviceable; *D. vinula*, *Diloba*, *A. megacephala*, *Catocala*, *Mania*, *Hypsipetes*, and others, like to spin up in such situations.

Under the moss on tree trunks the pupæ of many species may be met with; *Lithosidæ*, *Pæcilocampa*, *Spilosoma*, *Acronycta*, *Cymatophora* (sometimes), *Hadena*, *Orthosia*, *Habrostola*, *Catocala*, *Epione*, *Ennomos*, *Crocallis*, *Eurymene*, *Tephrosia*, &c., are all fond of choosing a snug mossy retreat.

Lastly, the bark and the wood itself are the abodes, the former of certain *Sesiæ*, *Tortrices*, *Ephestia pinquedinella*, &c., the latter of *Cossus*, *Zenzera*, and a few of the other *Sesiæ*. These pupæ of internal feeders are not a very satisfactory class to work at as a rule. Those in the bark are very tender, and liable to injury, either in extraction or by subsequent drying up of their surroundings; but we shall find that they are very apt to occur in stumps of trees which have been felled, and by noticing the little caps which conceal *S. culiciformis* in birch stumps, we may make sure of their presence, and by the aid of a saw, possess ourselves of a log or two, and perhaps of a goodly store of chrysalides. Again, when to our knowledge, *S. apiformis*, *bembeciformis*, *sphegiformis*, *myopiformis*, *formiciformis*, *tipuliformis*, or *Zenzera æsculi* (the males of the last-named will inhabit remarkably small twigs) are within a root, branch, stump, or twig, the latter may be cut or sawn off above and below the seat of the contained pupa (I remember once having seen a quantity of pupæ of *S. apiformis* thus collected, and the sight reminded me forcibly of the sticks used at fairs and races in the national and aristocratic game of "three sticks a penny"—that is, except as to price—and when the dealer, in whose possession they were, informed me that the pupæ were "in

the hole, upon his soul," I felt compelled to "try my luck"). In the case of whole trees affected with rare clearwings, they may be cut down and "transported," but the drawbacks are too obvious to mention.

Having discussed the outsides and insides of trees and bushes, the next subject will be—

Herbage. In the first place, the pupæ of internal feeders may be disposed of. The common thrift (*Statice armeria*), where it occurs, should be looked to for the precious canker-worm (*S. philanthiformis*) at its heart; pupæ domiciled in stems must be tracked and treated as proposed under "Caterpillar State," but as *otium cum dig.* (particularly when the maximum success can be secured with the minimum amount of drudgery) is the order of the day, it is a wrinkle to be acquainted with the fact, that, by following the reed-cutters, many pupæ of ten insects may be obtained at little cost and trouble; and, if we can manage to get access to the stacks, we can revel in pupæ-hunting of the very cleanest description, and may even run the chance of stumbling on the rare *Meliana flammea*; at any rate, by looking out for the capped extremities of the reeds (for larvæ, enclosed at the time of cutting, soon take measures to exclude the unwelcome atmosphere), many pupæ, such as of *Chilo*, *Senta*, &c., may be collected. "Low plants" have also their external pupal tenants; various species of Butterflies, *Anthrocera*, *Pterophori*, *Bombyccs*, &c., are to be found upon them, some presenting striking appearances already mentioned. *P. Machaon*, some of the *Vanessa*, *Limenitis*, *Melitæa*, some of the *Hipparchiæ*, *Odonestis*, *Gastropacha*, *Saturnia*, &c., are in this way to be met with.

Descending lower in the scale, the verdure of the ground should be turned over, like leaves in a ledger, rubbish and fallen leaves examined, stones, logs, and clods subjected to careful scrutiny, &c., &c.

Posts, palings, especially such as are rotten, defective, or lichen covered, should be carefully investigated, and old walls surveyed for the artfully concealed pupæ of *Bryophila*, thatch inspected, old beehives seen to, ledges, copings, and other over-hanging structures peered under, and all places, conceivable as likely, ransacked for pupæ.

Stubbing up roots is, by no means, an unprofitable method of hunting; those mentioned under "Caterpillar State" will prove the most remunerative; and here, again, by following the broom-makers, as they pull the ling and broom, our continental neighbours are enabled to save themselves much unnecessary labour. In some seasons, plenty of Death's heads are to be picked up of the potato-diggers for a mere song.

Raking, by means of a blunt three-toothed rake, is a good method of working sand-hills, and is frequently productive of an abundance of *Dianthæcia carpophaga*, *Agrotis cursoria*, *ripæ*, *præcox*, and the like.

Fir woods require a style of working, not, I believe, so generally known as it should be. In the more open spaces, and near the borders of

pine forests, we may commence operations by getting to the depth of the last season's deposit of leaf-mould, and then, by dividing the layer from that of the previous year, and turning it over, we shall expose such cocoons, or naked pupæ, as may be there. This layer, which is usually one and a-half to two inches in thickness, is easily separated, and many square yards may be laid bare, and examined, with ease, in a comparatively short space of time. It must be remarked, however, that pupæ will rarely be found within two feet of a tree: the best way, therefore, is to begin to work at that distance from the trunk. By this mode of collecting, *T. piniperda* is, in favourite localities, to be procured in large numbers, together with a sprinkling of such species as *F. piniaria*, *M. liturata*, and, a month or so later, *E. fasciaria*.

Pupa Digging is a method which has been strenuously advocated in this country; the implement most generally recommended here is a common garden trowel, but the French prefer a broad chisel, and our Lancashire friends use a three-pronged fork: the latter has the disadvantage of exerting unequal pressure when employed in levering up a sod; the curled-up sides of the garden trowel are rather objectionable—the tool should be made nearly flat, and, of course, the material should be steel, not iron, that is, for those who prefer the trowel to the chisel.

The Rev. Joseph Greene, who has had great experience as a pupa-digger, and whose well-known essay on the subject has been a theme of admiration amongst an appreciating circle of friends, points out that “parks and meadows with *scattered* timber trees” are the best localities, and that “those trees from which the surrounding grass has been worn away by the feet of cattle [in such a manner as to leave a ring round the trunk, for if the cattle come too close they do harm] and those situated on the borders or banks of streams, dykes, &c., when the soil is dry and friable, will be found most remunerative.” The *modus operandi* he describes as follows:—“If there be a nice dry sod ensconced in some snug corner formed by the roots, he can scarcely fail of success. Insert the trowel, *in this instance*, about eight inches from the trunk, to the depth of four. Turn up the sod and lay it on the ground. Look then at that part of the trunk from which the sod has been removed, and if you cannot see, feel gently with the hand for any cocoons which may adhere. Then take the sod in the left hand and tap it softly with the trowel, and the pupæ which form no cocoon, or a very weak one, such as *aprilina*, *prodromaria*, &c., will drop out. If the sod be composed of very loose, dry earth, simply shake it. Lastly, tear the roots asunder for *Bombyces*; if, however, the roots be strongly matted together, there is little or no use in doing this.” (Zool. 5395). The same gentleman believes the key to successful pupa-digging to be “*Patience*.”

On the same authority “poplar, willow, elm, birch, beech, ash, and Hawthorn” are stated to be the most remunerative trees.

Before leaving this subject, I cannot resist giving an anecdote, the facts related in which occurred to a friend of mine—a well-known entomologist, whose name need not be mentioned—on the occasion of his first attempt at pupa-digging. He had for some time been absorbed in his occupation at the foot of a majestic tree, when he became aware of the presence of an individual of the Bill Sykes persuasion. This party, who had evidently been watching the movements of my friend with anxious interest, broke out, “Yer a bit out, *you* are—it was t’other end o’ the field that the Spider stowed the swag, but yer won’t find it, ’cos the wedge is in the pot by this. *Somebody’s* bin an’ blowed, for bless *me* if *you* was at the crack: who’s blowed?” The relief of my friend when he got out of his dilemma may be better imagined than described; and he has not again, to my knowledge, gone pupa-digging.

Dragging with a water-net will have to be employed, if we desire to acquire the pupæ of the *Hydrocampidæ* and *Acentropus*; we shall have to drag in such water-plants as water lily, duckweed, *Callitriche*, *Stratiotes*, and *Potamogeton*, and examine them on the shore for the small silken cocoons of *Paraponyx* and *Acentropus*, and the quaint pupæ of *Cataclysta* and *Hydrocampa* enclosed in the old case of the larva.

Management.

To remove pupæ of Butterflies, &c., found on walls, under copings, and elsewhere, is not an easy job. Our endeavour must be to chip off the part of the substance to which they are attached without injuring them; nor is the cutting out of such cocoons as those of *Dicranuridæ* without its difficulty. These, by the way, should be extracted entire, and on no account opened, otherwise the future imago will lose its natural leverage, and most likely be crippled; for it must be recollected that when the time for emergence arrives, the insect is provided with a wonderful fluid for softening the structure which encloses it.

When chrysalides are fixed to leaves or twigs, we should try to cut off Λ -like portions, which will enable us to hook them upon a line of string, marked (s) in the accompanying figure,

Dead leaves, rubbish, &c., enclosing pupæ should be disturbed as little as possible; stems, &c., bearing *P. Machaon*, *Anthrocera*, *Odonestis*, and the like, have only to be cut off below the seat of the pupæ. The above kinds may be kept in gauze-covered band boxes (across which a few strings have been stretched, for the convenience of suspending some of them), in an outhouse, care being taken to exclude mice and other vermin.

Subterranean pupæ will require a different mode of treatment. When first secured, they should, with as much of the cocoon as we can manage to save entire, be conveyed between layers of moss, or anything which will steady them and keep off pressure ; then, on reaching home, they should be carefully deposited on, and covered over with, one of the soils mentioned at page 32, in some vessel of unglazed pottery-ware, a thin layer of cocoa-nut refuse being placed over all, to preserve a sufficient amount of moisture, and at the same time to assist in preventing mouldiness. Some collectors, however, prefer moss for the purpose, in which case it should be first dipped in boiling water, to destroy any tenants : baking and re-damping is sometimes resorted to for the purpose, but the moss is thereby rendered too friable. Some consider it necessary or desirable to place their pupæ on end, head uppermost, in the soil, in order that the perfect insect may emerge in the best position for making its exit, but this is not the posture most usual with pupæ found in Nature, though it is true that while the bulk lie horizontally, back uppermost, the *Vanessæ* and some internal stem-feeding species, by way of example, are placed head downwards, others tail end down.

Damping pupæ, I have long been satisfied, is, as a rule, a great mistake. It is well known that caterpillars, such as enter the earth to effect their metamorphosis, seek such corners and aspects as will protect them from the baking rays of the sun or the drenching showers which usually come from the S.W. ; they prefer the sides of trees and other objects which face the North, and we should therefore keep our chrysalides rather cool and dry than otherwise. But the great difficulty of damping is this : in Nature the cocoon keeps the wet from actually touching the pupa, but when we have broken the case, we cannot replace it ; we cover up the chrysalis with something that touches it all round, and then the wet hangs on it and does mischief, otherwise dampness seems necessary for some species to emerge in good order. Those which spin up above ground have generally a covering which acts as a parasol in sunshine, a para-pluie in rain ; while the naked chrysalides of Butterflies are usually in the shade of some leaf or ledge ; and *Machaon*, I suppose, gets so much moisture as well as heat in his fenny haunts that the one renders innocuous the effects of the other ; but I shall shortly have to refer more particularly to this under "forcing." Stems containing pupæ may be stuck in damp sand, for, should they dry up, there will be great danger of the contents being injured, from the contraction which takes place ; or the pupæ may be taken out of the stems and kept between layers of damp, not wet, sand with good chances of success. Aquatic pupæ must, of course, be kept in water in globes similar to those used for gold-fish, but covered with gauze.

Forcing is a process which, in the case of certain species, is invaluable to the collector. There are many species, the subterranean pupæ of which it will be found almost impossible to preserve alive, until the normal time of appearance of the perfect insect: of these, especially the thin-skinned Sphinges, such as *Cherocampa* and *Deilephila*, may be mentioned.

The principle on which forcing is founded, consists in the circumstance that though these pupæ are readily killed by cold with moisture as well as by dry heat, they are enabled to bear a considerable amount of heat and moisture together. This would seem to indicate that they originally inhabited a warm, moist climate, and may throw light on the appearance, at long intervals, of certain species in hot seasons. However that may be, it is indubitable that in the case of *D. galii* nearly every pupa can, by this treatment, be made to yield forth its perfect Sphinx, while without it, failure is almost inevitable.

The plan is as follows:—Procure the saucer of a flower-pot, of the size required, according to the number of subjects to be operated on, strew the bottom with a layer of gravel, and, over this, place some moss, again put gravel, followed by moss; on the latter let the pupæ be arranged, and then well covered over with a thicker layer of moss. Next take a piece of cane, bend it into the form of a circle in size a little smaller than the saucer, and secure it in this figure by the aid of twine; in the next place, take two other pieces of cane, each of about two-thirds the length of that which forms the circle, and having fixed them by twine so that they cross one another at right angles, bend them into semi-circular shapes and fasten the four ends to the circumference of the circular piece; then on the framework thus formed, bind moss by means of thread, and place the concern lightly with its circular base on the moss in the saucer. The object of this contrivance (see fig.) is, that, on emergence, the insect may be able at once to crawl to a place suitable for drying its wings; the whole may then be *freely* damped, and covered over with a suitable sized bell glass, to the knob of which a sheet of stiff paper has been attached, to act as a screen against the direct rays of heat; and the whole apparatus, with its contents, may now be placed in the fender in front of a good fire. Free and frequent damping with tepid water is necessary; for should dryness be permitted, the result will be a failure. There is no need to keep the fire alight by night. In two or three weeks the moths will begin to make their appearance. About Christmas is the best season for forcing. I am aware that there are other methods of forcing, but, as the one recommended above is that by which my friend, Dr. Boswell Syme,

has succeeded in bringing out *all*—I believe without exception—the *Galii* which he has at various times had the good fortune to meet with, in the larval state, on the Deal Sand-hills, it would be simply waste of space to mention them. To force pupæ which have spun up, all that is necessary is to place the cage, in which they are contained, on a mantel-shelf, in a room where there is a fire. It is best, however, to defer forcing these until they have felt a frosty night or two.

Pupæ in our breeding-cages should, of course, be left as much *in situ* as possible. The chief thing is to keep out that pest, *pseudospretella*; and sometimes it may be necessary just to examine, and, perhaps, gently to stir the earth in the cages, to see if they are at work.

P. O.—Pupæ are best transmitted in boxes, packed in soft moss—small ones may be sent between layers of wool—but the journey, even in a first-class padded carriage, is not calculated to add to their vitality.

Observation.

The student will find but little to observe in the way of habits beyond the movements already noticed at p. 61–2, for jerking, writhing, and wriggling are about all that the pupæ of *Lepidoptera* are capable of. He will, however, find that many pupæ, shortly before the emergence of the perfect insect, are able by means of more or less toothed annulations (as shown in the annexed cut) to wriggle themselves towards daylight. This has been noticed in *Ch. Elpenor*, in *Cossus*, *Zenzera*, *Hepialus*, the *Sesiæ*, and others. Again, the pupæ of the Plume-moths, when touched or annoyed, can turn their heads down quite over their tails in the most ridiculous fashion. Many of the forms are well worth study, and are suggestive of grouping species; for, as with the eggs, a similarity of structure is noticeable between the pupæ of allied species, though here and there we meet with a puzzling exception: for example, who could suspect, without previous instruction or experience, that the chrysalides of the little Plume-moths would be fixed in their positions, like those of some of our Butterflies, or that *Ephyra* and *Rivula* would similarly mimic the mode of pupation of other Butterflies?

In describing a chrysalis, the student will observe that the various parts of the future perfect insect—as the head, the thorax, the abdomen, the eyes, antennæ, legs, and wings—are clearly mapped out upon its surfaces (as shown in the accompanying cut, which represents the pupa of *S. carpinii*). If this be borne in mind, the description is more likely to be accurate and intelligible, as the respective parts can be readily referred to. Then

it should be noted—1. Is the pupa unattached or attached, and if so, how attached? 2. Is it naked or furnished with a cocoon, or the rudiments of one; if the latter, describe it? 3. How is the skin of the larva shed from the chrysalis? 4. What is the length of the newly-transformed pupa? 5. What is its proportionate bulk? 6. Describe its form? 7. Its structure? 8. Its tints and markings? 9. In what manner does it vary? 10. Does it resemble or differ from its congeners; if so, in what way? 11. Do any changes afterwards take place in form, structure, markings, colouring, &c.? 12. At what time is the pupa state assumed? 13. How long does it continue? 14. What movements is it capable of making? 15. How does the male pupa differ from that of the female?—and so on.

Preservation.

In the case of chrysalides this is a very simple matter. They may be killed by plunging into boiling water, or the puparium, after the escape of the perfect insect, may be neatly gummed together to the shape it possessed prior to that occurrence. Some, after death, lose their polish, which may be imitated by varnishing, if thought desirable. It is always advisable, in such as are naturally attached, like the butterfly chrysalides, to secure the leaf, or whatever it may be, to which they are fixed, for this will give the specimen a natural appearance. The cocoons, &c., where practicable, should be preserved, to give an idea as to their appearance in Nature. But these cocoons, pupæ, &c., should be kept in a collection separate from the perfect insects, because, on the one hand, the danger of their getting loose, rolling about, and doing damage is considerable; and, on the other, they interfere with the symmetry of the arrangement.

END OF "CHRYsalis STATE."

THE PERFECT STATE. Collecting.

"Eager he looks : and soon to glad his eyes,
 "From the sweet bower by nature formed, arise
 "Bright troops of virgin moths and fresh born butterflies ;
 "Who broke that morning from their half-year's sleep,
 "To fly o'er flowers where they were wont to creep."—CRABBE.

From childhood to green old age, few pastimes are more healthily exciting than "the chase" of the perfect insect. The bare notion of "a gilded butterfly," radiant with beauty and grace, awakens a train of thought associated with joyous days of country life. But we must cast aside for a while such sentiments and descend to matter of fact.

The apparatus required for hunting the perfect insect consists of, in the first place—

Nets: of these, we will first consider the *frames*. That now most commonly in use is a light ring net, the steel ring being jointed for the convenience of folding up into a small space; the handle of this implement is sometimes made on the sliding principle of a telescope.

The umbrella net (so called from its appearance when folded up) may be of exceedingly light construction, the ring being formed of two self-acting lengths of stiff "jack spring," which are hinged on to two pieces of brass respectively, as shown in the adjoining cut. One of the pieces of brass is rivetted to the stick of the net near the ferrule end, as shown in the upper figure; the other is free to slide along the stick, and has a notch which fits a pin, fixed firmly to the stick, for the double purpose of preserving the circular shape of the net, and of preventing it from twisting round. It is a favourite with many: its advantages are that it is lighter, stronger, generally more capacious, and more quickly brought into use. The real objection to it is (that is, if you are troubled with morbid sensibility of feelings, and can't stand chaff,) the mortification of hearing some urchin remark, "Look at that fool! why don't he put his umbrella up in the pelting rain!"

The cane net, made with a tubular T or Y-piece, into the arms of which the ends of a yard and a-half, or more, according to fancy, of cane, or whalebone, are inserted, the other aperture being fitted with a handle, for which a walking stick is generally used.

The "30-foot handle net," supposed to be necessary for working *Apatura Iris*. As a substitute, a 20-foot mountain-ash pole may be cut from a dense copse, and an ordinary net tied on to it.

The clap-net, which seems to have quite gone out of fashion; and others, special ones, which will be mentioned in their places.

The material of which the bag of the net is composed, varies according to taste. Leno and book muslin are generally used; the former being green, the latter white. Silk gauze (green) is often used, but its tendency to fray, is much against it. The best materials are *Crépe lisse* and *grenadine*, both silken fabrics of a durable and transparent description, which, though rather expensive, possess very superior qualities. Again, for night work, black is much to be preferred to green or white, as insects when caught, can be more readily distinguished; and white is certainly preferable to green for day work, not only for a similar reason, but because most people are aware that the common green dyes rot the textures to which they have been applied; and, as a consequence, green leno nets come to grief with the slightest rough usage. The only drawback to white is, that it attracts the attention of the million, and betrays your whereabouts: and this reminds me that if you are of a solitary, retiring disposition, and prefer to keep your own pet locality to yourself, it is advisable that you should attire yourself in rifle green, or some such sombre tint, and above all, shun the use of a shiny cap, brass fittings, and such glittering articles as may be seen for miles even by the naked eye; for should you neglect these precautions, your actions are very likely to be curiously followed by the aid of a field glass, without which, an amateur detective desirous of ferreting out the secret havnts of a sly collector, would as soon think of starting on his expedition, as a sportsman of leaving his gun at home on the first of September.

The make of the bag of a net is worth consideration. To start with, before making up the net, the material should be well damped to take out the dressing. In ordinary cases, as in the umbrella kind, the distance from

the mouth to the bottom should be rather less than the length of the collector's arm, and it is a good plan to let in a circular bottom piece, in the manner of the crown of my grandmother's cap. The seams should be outside. With small ring nets the bag need not be so deep; it should be made of a tapering shape, which will enable the collector, by grasping it in the

middle, to at once preclude egress to any captured insect. The ring to which the bag is attached, should be covered with thin leather.

The forceps here represented, are, by some, considered useful for capturing insects settled on leaves.

An acquaintance of mine who had repeatedly been stung (in his unsuccessful attempts to secure certain *Sesiidæ*!) declared that for the future he intended to use this instru-

ment, so that, before handling his captures, he might make sure of the order to which they belonged.

A needle and thread, and also string, should always be carried. Some day, one or other of them will prove invaluable; the former may be secured, with a reserve stock of pins of various sizes, in a pocket pin-cushion. A pocket compass also, is a *sine qua non* when we have to work extensive tracts of forest land.

Boxes. First a collecting box containing a stock of suitable pins. It should be made of zinc (which is not apt to corrode like blocked tin), in order that the cork may be damped; a precaution very necessary in hot seasons. The best method of fixing the cork is shown in the adjoining

cuts:—the lower shows how a doubled strip of zinc bent at a right angle is soldered to the centre of the bottom of the box (*b*), the double strip having been passed through the cork is then turned down so as to clasp it, as shown at *c c—c c* in both figures—the corners of the cork are fastened down in the manner indicated by the top cut. Next a few glass-topped “purple-shouldered” boxes for the reception of such insects as, being in doubt about them at the time of capture, we may wish to identify on the spot; and lastly, a goodly store of pill and chip boxes of various sizes, prepared as recommended at page 12, these should be punctured in the centre of the bottom in three or four places, either with a darning needle or with the point of the blade of a penknife, to facilitate the application of chloroform when necessary.

Killing apparatus, or, at any rate, something to stupify our captures on the field, will also be required. The choice of one or more of the following may be made.

Tobacco smoke very quickly destroys insect life, smokers may breathe it into the boxes containing insects to be operated on.

A cyanide bottle. This is rigged up as follows:—take a wide-mouthed bottle, having a capacity of from three to six ounces; strew a layer of cyanide of potassium (a deadly poison, by the way) on the bottom, and, over this, sufficient plaster of Paris, mixed with water to the consistence of thick cream, to cover the cyanide; when this is set, a few thicknesses of blotting paper should form another layer; and an air-tight cover (which is more handy than a stopper) should close the mouth. Such a bottle may be charged by any druggist at a trifling expense, and will last for months, provided that it be kept cool and the air be excluded. When the poison begins to lose power, its effect may be greatly increased by warming the bottle with the hand or otherwise; but it is then time to have the bottle replenished. Another way, is to make use of alternate layers of cyanide and blotting paper. NOTE.—The destructive power is much increased by the addition of tartaric acid, which, by decomposing the deadly salt, causes the evolution of hydrocyanic acid.

A chloroform bottle. That most recommended is constructed of brass, the only exit for the chloroform being through a finely perforated nipple which screws in; and this again is capped over with a top, which fits by screwing accurately on to the aperture of the nipple. The latter permits a very small drop to flow at a time; or, if any surface be touched with it, the fluid runs out very slowly; thus we can allow a drop to run over punctures made in the chip box, and clapping our finger over it, the vapour speedily enters, and does its work.

A laurel tin is used by some for the purpose, but unless the bruised leaves be very fresh, their action is scarcely speedy enough for field work.

The subject of stupifying and killing is more fully entered into under "Management."

A satchel is a better receptacle for our apparatus than the pockets of a coat, because the danger of crushing is avoided, our burden can be whipped off at any moment that great freedom of action is required, our treasures may be carried like a carpet bag in the hand, so that shaking is much diminished, and, above all, greater coolness is ensured, for the heat of our body on a hot day is not likely to conduce to the peace and quietness of our captures; for the latter reason, the material should be pale in colour; and if it be furnished with a couple of rings to be used for either a handle or shoulder strap (with swivels at each end, like, but larger than, those on our watch guards, which can be instantly attached or detached), so much the better.

Butterfly hunting is generally looked on as simple work enough. It is true that some, such as the Wood white, may be easily run down by a child, but others have remarkable powers of flight. A few, as the Brimstone, resort to the dodge of "doubling" when hotly pursued. The purple Emperor and his attendant knight, *Thecla quercus*, try to keep out of our reach; others, as *Thecla rubi*, render themselves invisible in some mysterious way. The butterfly hunter should be a cool hand, and should strike with precision when the proper moment comes. He should avoid placing himself between the sun and the object he desires to capture, for, in that case, a shadow will be fatal to his hopes, and he should endeavour to get to windward of his game. Sometimes by stationing himself at a particular spot, and striking steadily, as the butterfly comes within reach, he may do far more execution than could be accomplished by any fleetness of legs, dexterity of arms, and general powers of endurance; for many species have a tendency to return to the same places of call, and to retravel the *routes* previously traversed. The position taken should, if possible, as in a wood, for instance, be some narrow gorge, through which the insect, if it comes that way, must pass, or there may be some particular batch of bloom, or even a favourite twig which we may take advantage of. The fritillaries and the white admiral have a tendency to thread their way over and over again, through the same rides of woods. The *Vanessæ* will revisit the identical flower (thistle or whatever it may be) most pertinaciously. The Duke of Burgundy will return to the same twig, and so, too, will the Purple Emperor; but, for him, we shall either have to mount a favoured tree, and, with a long-handled net, bide our time, or use the cumbrous 30-foot handled net; but the best plan is to find out a locality, in which his majesty occurs, where the oaks are low and pollard. The feminine *A. Iris* may, however, be sometimes taken in the act of depositing her eggs on sallow, and the male, as already stated, now and then descends from his throne to visit puddles, wet mud, dung, dead animals, &c.; he is then, as at all times, very bold, and, if the collector be not flurried, may be cautiously secured. A brilliant idea is to shoot, with dust shot, or with a charge of water (as they do Humming birds in S. America), the Emperor as he sits in state! H. I. M. is very pugnacious also, and another dodge is to shy up shining pieces of tin, or stones with bits of white paper attached, when his dignity being wounded, he will sometimes chase the offending object to the ground.

Mothing is a term used to express catching, with a net, moths upon the wing. At first, one might be apt to think that this consisted

merely in chasing every insect seen and endeavouring to net it; but a large amount of trouble may be saved, and a far greater number of captures secured, by a little foreknowledge.

The grand secret of successful collecting, whether by day, dusk, dark, or dawn, lies in one little word—**WHY?** If the beginner, instead of clinging persistently to the delusion that the more ground he gets over the better will be his sport, would just ask himself, “Why here?” whenever he captures a decent insect, and would insist on a satisfactory reply, or else a give-it-up from his inner man, before leaving the spot, we should soon have a race of real insect hunters. I fancy I hear some one say, “Why any fool knows that!” Exactly so; and “any fool” will doubtless keep up his character for stupidity, by blundering on, and neglecting to act on it.

Where there is one there are more, is true in a general sense; hence the greater reason why the above interrogatory should be answered on the spot. “Why?” here, asks a string of questions. Whence from?—Whither bound?—Was it a female on the mission of ovipositing?—a male in quest of a virgin female?—fluttering about its food plant?—on its way to some neighbouring attraction?—on the wing for pleasure, enjoying the hot sunshine, the cool shade, or some other congenial atmospheric condition?—its proper time of flight?—seeking a place of rest?—or was it disturbed, and in its fright flew, it knew not where?—was it blown by the wind against its will?—under the influence of light?—or after somebody’s sugar?

Prospecting is an important measure; on visiting a locality, we should carefully survey it, in order to form an estimate of its probable capabilities; the flora of the neighbourhood, the character of the timber, the soil, aspect, shelter, temperature, moisture, &c., should be ascertained. Woods, when situated inland, are profitable hunting grounds, especially if not too dense. The open parts, as the rides and clearings where the trees have been felled and the underwood is of only two or three years’ growth, are the best spots; outside, the border on the lee side is the most productive; the same applies to pine forests. Parks, when timbered with majestic trees, and particularly when there are plantations enclosed in ring fences, are very desirable places of resort. Heaths and moors are often productive; during windy weather, the sheltered hollows, usually yield most insects; at other times, the exposed positions pay best.

Lanes, where the hedges are neither too high nor too dense should be selected, and due regard must be had to the direction of the wind at the time of working. Fens, as a rule, are more profitable the more extensive

they are ; open parts bordered by plenty of reeds, bull-rushes, &c., should be chosen. This class of locality may be worked by sugar and by light, as well as by mothing at dusk and dawn, and searching after dark. Ponds, borders of streams, &c., when there is plenty of vegetation at the edges, and aquatic plants on and under the water, are most suitable. Sea-side localities should be worked as near the coast as possible ; under-cliffs and sand-hills will prove most remunerative. In the former, a good variety of low herbs on broken ground without trees or woods (for these are not very productive near the coast), are good signs. Sand-hills should be pretty barren, for then, the insects will be found thickly congregated in the little oases of the desert. Chalk-pits, gravel-pits, and similar places are admirably adapted for collecting ; the parts which have not been meddled with for some time, are the best. Downs and mountain sides with short herbage of a varied nature, especially those in which wild thyme predominates, and which have an aspect sheltered from the wind, will be found good. Waste places overgrown with rank herbage, thistles, ragwort, and such like, sometimes teem with moths ; generally speaking (but not always), however, the class of insects met with are of a common order. Banks covered with rank weeds usually produce plenty of common things. When the herbage is of a more refined and scant nature, the sport will be proportionate ; in such places, we sometimes meet with hymenopterous nests infested by parasitic moths, which may be caught on the wing hard by, in the evening.

The time of year to start after collecting any given species is usually determined by a reference to the dates given in Stainton's "Manual," or else by notes in our diaries ; but it by no means follows that, because we capture an insect on the 1st of April, the 4th of July, or the 5th of November, in one year, we shall find it on that particular day in the next. An allowance must be made for forwardness or backwardness of the season, as the case may be.

The state of the weather must also be taken into account. Insects usually come in greatest force when a few fine days have been preceded by rain ;—warm wet weather is frequently very productive, but collecting in the rain is not an enjoyable occupation. We may generally foretell coming rain by observing the sky—"Red sky at night is the shepherd's delight, red sky in the morning is the shepherd's warning,"—also the latitude in which the insect is sought must be considered, for the further north we go, the later (*ceteris paribus*) it will occur. Sometimes a prevailing east wind will delay the appearance of a species for weeks. A curious exemplification of this occurred to me several years ago—I had brought indoors a large number of pupæ of *Clostera anachoreta*, for the purpose of forcing, in order that I might get over the job of setting them out in the slackest

time of the year ; the chocolate-tips began to emerge freely about Christmas, when, all at once, an east wind set in, and, as suddenly, the moths ceased to show up ; as soon as the wind shifted, however, out they came again as thickly as before. The cause of the phenomenon was evident, for the pupæ were kept just as warm as ever, on the mantel-piece.

Another way of hitting on the time for the appearance of a species is more practical ; it consists in noting and associating in the mind with it some other occurrence. By way of illustration as to my meaning, let us say the whitethorn is beginning to show its little reddish buds—it is time to look for *H. rupicapraria* ; the blackthorn is beginning to blossom—now for *L. polycommata* ; and so on with other buds and blossoms. Again, *Biston hirtaria* has been out a week in our London squares—*Aleucis pictaria* ought to be appearing at Dartford or Chigwell Row ;—*C. linæella* has been swarming for a fortnight on our lime trees—*P. oppressana* should be out.

The times of day or night at which insects fly also demand special notice. Butterflies love the sunshine ; many of the Hawk-moths fly at twilight, but *Macroglossa* and some of the *Sesiæ* take wing in the early morning sunshine, generally retiring for two or three hours towards mid-day, and re-appearing soon after noon ; the *Nonagriæ*, *Tapinostola*, *Miana*, *Luperina*, and others, settle down on their food plants when, after dusk, their short flight of twenty minutes or half-an-hour is over ; other *Noctuæ* come forth from their hiding places sooner or later after the shades of evening have set in ; most *Geometræ* start forth as dusk is coming on ; the *Tortrices* are usually on the wing a couple of hours before dusk.

Another point to be remembered is that, if an insect be on the wing an hour before dusk it will, under favourable circumstances, be so again at an hour *after* day-break, or, if it fly an hour after dusk—an hour *before* dawn ; for the amount of light is then about the same, and light has more to do with the matter than is generally supposed. Under extraordinary occurrences, such as eclipses (when even chanticleer crows out of time), night-flying moths will come forth in the middle of the day—but the more familiar examples with us are, that on dull sunless days, butterflies make themselves up for sleep, just as *Noctuæ* do on bright moonlight lights ; for I cannot subscribe to the theory that the latter are attracted by the light of our satellite, and flock to it in such numbers as to account for the spots thereon.

Watching the trees in an open glade of beeches or oaks, we may notice the gambols of the Hook-tips as they flit about in the sunshine

quite out of our reach ; but every now and then one will descend, and may then be captured. This is applicable to many species, dozens of which may thus be taken. *L. rubricollis*, at times, swarms round oaks, *Brepheos* round sallows, *F. pinaria* round firs. Towards dusk, by stationing ourselves under oaks or other trees, troops of dancing little moths will be seen, and by the aid of a longish handled net, we may thus supply ourselves and friends with *Eup. dodoneata*, some of the *Phycidæ*, several *Tortricæ*. It was in this manner that the hitherto rare *S. deflexana* was obtained ; this latter sport though, only lasts for a quarter of an hour or so, but during this short space of time much may be done.

In working hedges, rides of woods, and similar situations, at and after dusk, a great deal more is to be effected by taking up a position which experience has shown us to be good, and then quietly biding our time, than by rushing about in a state of frenzy and striking hap-hazard ; and we must also recollect that the colour of the insect for which we may be specially looking, makes a difference in the matter ; thus, if it be white or pale we should endeavour so to place ourselves, that its form and size may stand boldly out against a dark mass of foliage ; if, on the other hand, it be green, brown, grey, or sombre in its tints, then we must take the sky for the back-ground. A little practice will enable us to tell whether the insect netted is the right one or not, for probably it has some peculiar mode of spreading out, or closing up, its wings in the net—shamming death, vivaciously struggling for liberty, or settling quietly on the sides.

Bloom, or patches of flowers, whether in a wild or cultivated state, are best worked by standing perfectly still at the particular flower-bed or patch of bloom which we have found, or which we should judge, to be most attractive, and then, whether it be *M. fuciformis* at Bugle, *C. porcellus* at Rhododendron, *S. convolvuli* at Petunia, *D. lineata* at a bed of scarlet Pelargonium, *Dianthæciæ* at Catchfly, *Plusiæ* at Turn-cap lily, or anything else at any of the numerous alluring flowers which will be enumerated further on, they will not be afraid to come within easy reach.

By lying down on the ground in suitable localities, many moths become evident which, in our erect position, had been invisible—little *Psyche radiella* is a striking instance of this. By squatting down, and so lowering the level of our sight, we may often, both by day and night, bring into the field of vision insects which otherwise would have remained unnoticed.

A wide range of vision, most useful in working banks, may be acquired with a little practice ; the way is to look intently at a spot some six yards in advance, when, after a time, you will become aware of any

object stirring within a space of, say, forty square yards; this is the best method known to me of working for *S. chrysidiformis* in the perfect state, which, unless frightened, booms along like a Burnet, but, being of small size, easily escapes notice until the eye becomes familiar with it; and this reminds me that by experience it is no difficult matter to detect species on the wing, thereby saving considerable time and trouble by not catching and letting out again those "not wanted."

The altitudes at which insects fly vary from that assumed by the Purple Emperor down to *Acentropus niveus*, which skims along the surface of the water. *C. bajularia* flies at dusk at a height of about ten or twelve feet from the ground, other species even higher, but the majority flit within reach of an ordinary net. We must not, therefore, content ourselves with merely looking straight before our noses.

Searching for settled insects is apparently a simple method of collecting, but great practice is required before proficiency is attained.

Boles of trees; these should be carefully scrutinised for moths: anything having an approach to a triangular outline, whether of the right-angled or isosceles form, should immediately arrest our attention.

The collector will soon become familiar with the posture of the pugs. Some, as the *Notodontidæ*, *Limacodes*, *Cilix*, sit with their wings much arched, and may be best detected by examining the tree trunks in profile. Certain *Geometræ* rest with their wings erect over their back; and indeed all moths, when in the act of drying their wings, assume this attitude, and are readily passed over when looked at point blank. Some species among the *Geometræ*, prefer the more elevated positions on the trunk; others, as the more Bombiciform *Geometræ*, the Prominents and *Noctuæ*, are usually found from about 2 to 5 feet from the ground, rarely above 3 feet. *Noctuæ*, indeed, generally ensconce themselves near the foot. On tree trunks, early in the morning, and again after noon, some of the *Sesiæ* may be found drying their wings; but they soon jerk themselves off on to the ground, and subsequently take wing. **NOTE.**—If we see the empty pupa-cases sticking out from the bark, or elsewhere, it is, of course, a strong presumption in favour of the species being out. On windy nights, again, numbers of insects may be found on the sheltered side of trunks.

Palings should be sought over from top to bottom. The top ledge in spring and autumn, is the place to look for apterous females, which usually run up to the highest point they can reach, soon after leaving the chrysalis. *Cucullia chamomillæ*, and *umbratica* secrete themselves under

the ledge, and *Cossus* erects himself like a split-off piece at the top corner. The paling itself should then be looked at in such a direction, that we can see the angles formed where the pales overlap; and the foot quite at the bottom, especially if there be grass or other herbage growing against it (this being turned down for the purpose), should be examined. In Richmond Park, *Larentia multistrigaria* almost invariably occurs at this part, and many *Noctuæ* may thus be discovered in their retreats. The sheltered side of the paling should be selected. The ledges of other structures than palings should be peered under; a favourite hiding place of *Catocala* is under window sills, copings, &c. Outhouses and barns, should be visited—these places will in the winter afford shelter to hibernating species. As a rule, old moss and lichen-covered palings are best—park fences are better than open palings—but new oak palings are very prolific in the case of *Tineina*,—nor must even tarred fences be despised. The grand time for this kind of work, is after a boisterous wind. We will suppose that there is half a gale from the S.W. to-day; to-morrow, if we can find a fence with a N.E. aspect in a good locality, such as Dartford, for instance, we shall find plenty of sport, for sometimes the fences are smothered with moths. Again, on warm days, while a stormy wind is still blowing, throngs of small things seek sheltered places, especially such as those to the windward of which lies a wood. It is therefore of great importance, that the collector should make a mental memorandum of the aspects of the fences he visits, and also acquaint himself with the way the wind blows, or, rather, how it blew yesterday evening, in which case he may march straight off to the most productive spots.

Herbage may be examined next; on cloudy days, or towards dusk, butterflies may be found fast asleep, when they may be readily secured. It takes a little time for the unpractised eye to get accustomed to the appearance of a butterfly with its wings erect over its back, though, after that, they are not difficult of detection; the “Blues” may thus be boxed in abundance in their haunts. The little *Psyche radiella*, when not flying, may sometimes be found settled on grass or other herbage, at proper time and place. But, at night, after the first flight, certain species, such as *Nonagria*, *Tupinostola*, and *Miana arcuosa*, for instance, may be found, singly and in pairs, settled in abundance on the foliage of their food-plants. *A. australis*, *Luperina*, and others are, similarly, to be collected. Then, most collectors are aware how abundantly the males and females of *H. rupicaprariva* occur on the hawthorn twigs and buds. Beside these, many other species, especially *Geometers*, may be met with, settled on foliage after dark, by simply looking for them by the aid of a powerful lantern.

Beating is the plan usually adopted for disturbing the tenants of foliage, and starting them on the wing. Net in the right hand and beating stick in the left, the operator thrashes away, snapping up in his net such moths as fly out. Where there are two collectors, it is a good plan for one to beat and for the other to follow at a respectful distance with his net; for insects sometimes require a little time to make up their minds to take flight, and a solitary beater misses a number which dart out from spots that he has passed. If this arrangement be not made, then that collector who lets his comrade go first, gets the best of it, which is, of course, just the reverse in paling working. It should be well remembered that it is the leeward side of a hedge or bush which should be beaten; for the insects will be certain to fly out on that side.

Tree beating by means of a long pole, is useful for dislodging the Hook-tips and other species, some of which fly in the sunshine, some in early morning, and it is especially serviceable when it is desired to procure females.

Trunk beating by the mallet, as for larvæ (see page 24 *ante*), is an excellent way of obtaining perfect insects; but the weight of the implement is much against it, and almost as much vibration may be produced upon even large trees by means of a stout cane or newly-cut hazel stick some five or six feet in length, by striking the trunk in such a manner that nearly the whole length will jar upon it at the same moment. This is the plan by which *Tephrosia consonaria*, *extersaria*, and *viduaria*, the *Boarmidæ*, *Aventia flexula*, *Erastria fuscula*, *Eupithecia lariciata*, *pusillata*, *abbreviata*, *dodoneata*, *indigata*, *Hypœna crassalis*, and others, may be best obtained in the day-time. In the same way, *Lithosia quadra* may be dislodged; but, in this case, striking the larger branches of oaks, &c., is more productive. NOTE.—The collector must keep his eyes well open, and in all directions around him, for some fall plump down, and others make a bolt of it.

Pumping, by means of a powerful garden engine, is a still better means of dislodging the tenants of a tree; but, unfortunately, though very effective at home, we cannot well apply it on our travels.

Pelting with stones may also be employed with advantage, and of all trees, there is, perhaps, none which harbours so many moths as the yew.

Brushing tree trunks and palings with a leafy little bough, or with a dusting-broom, is a good plan of starting such species as are difficult to see.

Blowing upon the trunks, &c., has been adopted with great success by Mr. Barrett. If the weather be windy and not too hot, numbers of small species will be found settled on the sheltered sides of trees, and by blowing sharply on the trunk, and at the same time holding the net in a suitable position, they may be driven into it and easily secured. The great majority will, of course, be *Tineina*, but many *Tortrices* will also be found, as well as *Eupithecia* and other *Geometra* (such as *T. extersaria* and *lichenaria*), which cannot easily be seen on the bark. Even the prominents and other large species, if not blown off, are made to raise their wings, and so become visible.

Fanning is a proceeding equally efficacious with "blowing," and better adapted to people whose lungs are not of the leathery denomination. It is surprising how powerful a blast may be driven by a strongly-made fan.

Thatch beating is, in the autumn, wonderfully productive of *Depressaria*, which, in many localities, take refuge in it in vast numbers; but other moths, such as *Noctua*, *Geometra*, *Pyrales*, *Scoparia*, &c., frequently make thatched roofs their places of retreat.

Switching low herbage is a first-rate method of working the perfect insect, especially on rough broken ground. A long switch is passed, with a tapping movement, from left to right, and *vicé versá*, as we walk along, and, by this means, we disturb such insects as may be hidden in advance of us. As they start up, we can chase and net them, or, better still, first mark them down and cautiously put the net over them, for while some, as *A. luctuosa*, *A. sulphuralis*, *A. ornata*, *A. gilvaria* and *citraria*, *Eubolia*, *Aplasta*, *Pseudopterpna*, *Spilodes*, *Madopa*, &c., soon settle again, others, as *Euthemonia russula*, including, now and then, a few of those already mentioned, if not approached with great caution, will fly up, up, up, until all hopes of securing them are lost. *Brephos parthenias*, by the way, will soar up in this manner, and so, too, will *Fidonia piniaria*, and sometimes even *Psyche*—this, of course, applies in like manner to insects *tramped up* as we walk through herbage of any kind.

Fumigating and *vaporising* are, by many, considered profitable modes of collecting from bushes and herbage. The operation will be conducted as recommended for larvæ at page 25, and here we may sometimes take advantage of a bonfire of weeds, when the nature of the wind keeps the smoke down.

Sweeping is here mentioned, because, though a poor return for the labour in the way of *good* specimens, may be expected, yet an idea of the

fauna of the neighbourhood may by it, in some slight measure, be formed. The great thing to be borne in mind, is (that is, if *specimens* be required), not to keep sweeping on regardless of contents, but to examine the net after each two or three sweeps, otherwise no recognisable capture will be found. It is all very well as a sort of "sample taking" of a locality, when there is nothing to urge us on to use our wits; but, as a method of collecting the perfect insect, it must rank very low indeed.

Fishing out *Acentropus* from off the pond weeds, by means of a very shallow net, with a longish handle, is another mode of collecting. In the London district, collectors must not mind being asked, "Please, Sir, give me all the tiddlers you ketch."

Boxing requires a word or two. It has already been shown how simple it is, with a little practice, to manipulate the box with one hand, but what here demands attention is boxing from the net. When we have netted an insect, we should observe whether its tendency is to fly upwards or downwards, and hold our net accordingly; or throw the jelly-bag part of the net over the ring to make certain, and then get the hand in cautiously, holding the handle of the net between the knees, or let it lie on the ground; and next we should place a box of suitable size over the fly with the right hand, and quickly grasp the box outside, together with the net that covers it in the left hand; then, with the right at liberty, we may rapidly place on the lid with a tilting movement, enclosing, if necessary, a small portion of the net, which may be gently withdrawn before quite shutting the lid; the box and contents may now be transferred to our satchel, taking care not to mix it with our "empties," otherwise many captives will be let out again, and remembering that each individual should be accommodated with a separate travelling compartment. And here it may be noted, that, if there be any doubt as to an insect having been secured, the collector should look for it anywhere but in the box, for many a good insect has been lost by "peeping." But if it be desirable to kill the insect on the spot, the cyanide bottle may be used instead of the box; or, after putting the box over the insect, we may touch the net, over it, with chloroform, and then put the lid on over the network, or cover over for a few seconds with the palm of the hand; when the insect is stupified it should be turned out, pinned, pricked with oxalic acid, and transferred to the pinning box. The collector will take note that while many species travel safely in the boxes, thereby saving us much time, others will inevitably destroy their plumage if so conveyed. All the Butterflies, with the exception of *Leucophasia sinapis*, are perfectly quiet when boxed, but the larger ones take up too much space, and are better stupified, killed, and pinned on the spot; they should not be disfigured

by pinching, which is a barbarous process. The *Hydrocampidæ* and *Acentropus* should never be boxed for the reason that they soon part with their moisture, die, and become brittle—they should be set on the spot.

Most day-flying species are at once quiet when placed in the dark interior. The Hawk-moths, as a rule, should be killed on the spot, but the sun-loving *Sesiæ* travel well enough; *Bombyces* and *Pseudo-bombyces* should never be carried about alive. Of night-flying *Noctuæ* and *Geometræ*, the great majority may be safely transferred in their boxes to our satchel, with certain exceptions, as, for example, *Cymatophora*, *Thyatira*, *Catocala*, *Uropteryx*, and some of the *Acidalia*.

NOTE.—It is best, after collecting at Sugar, Sallow, or Ivy, to leave such moths as do not knock about alive, till the next morning, as they then empty themselves and preserve much better; for, a moth killed with its body full of sugar or honey, is apt to become an object after a time. Sugar will sometimes exude from a prick in the body of *G. vaccinii* after it has been set two or three years, but it soon soaks through and spoils *X. rhizolitha* and some others (the unique *Noctua flammatrix* in Mr. Bond's cabinet is full of sugar). Another way is to chloroform and pin them when one gets home, and kill them the next day. When pinned in our boxes, the wings should not be allowed to stick up, but ought to be kept down by cross pins, for if the specimen get at all set it will be pretty certain to spring, after being removed from the setting-board.

Attractions for moths and butterflies.—Before proceeding further, it will be as well to enumerate the predilections of the perfect insects. These centres of attraction may be classified as natural and artificial.

The virgin female, of course, holds the first place, and as, in the case of insects, she does not seek, but rather is sought by, the male, she ought, during her life, to attract at least one of the opposite sex. The case of *Orygia antiqua* is too well known even to the non-entomological. A web, with a contained chrysalis, is secured for the purpose of seeing what it will come to, and is perhaps placed in a window-sill; one day a supposed spider makes its exit, much to the disgust of the captor, who had previously hoped he should be gratified by the appearance of a *real* moth; but what puzzles him most, is that a whole lot of little brown things, with a white spot on either fore-wing, and with feathery antennæ, should be “all about the place,” some of them apparently so “tame” that (likely enough the investigator begins to get alarmed at the phenomenon) they decline to budge before the approach of even stately man. The noble “Kentish glory,” “The Emperor,” and “oak eggar” are likewise most pertinacious in their pursuit of a bred female; and a friend of mine used to remark to those who for the first time saw “the glories” coming up against the wind, “We feed ‘em well here, you see,”—a bit of chaff, that.

Most other female *Bombyces* are very attractive in their way; the Swifts, the *Liparidæ*, *Lasiocampa*, *Limocodes*, as well as the *Smerinthi*, the *Sesiæ*, the Prominents, Hook-tips, several *Geometræ*, the *Psychidæ*, &c., are well known, but probably all moths of the sex are so in some degree, for we notice an indisposition for flight in the unimpregnated female, to such an extent, that one captured on the wing, is pretty sure to be on the errand of ovipositing; with the exception, of course, of such autumnal hibernating species as do not pair till spring.

An attracting cage for the female is readily made, by tying three thin strips of cane, each in the form of a circle of three or four inches diameter, and then fixing them at right angles to one another, so that they will then give the idea of a rudimentary hollow globe, over which muslin or green leno may be stretched, completing a chamber through which the air can pass. The addition of a fixed twig to the in-

terior for the moth to hold on by, is an improvement.

The principle is, that the moth being inserted and fastened into this cage, "the scent" will be more readily wafted, than by other means, to distant spots, as it travels in a line corresponding to the direction of the wind. This line, when crossed by a male, is, under favourable circumstances, quickly followed up; for although his course towards his lady-love may be zig-zag at first, the deviation from it becomes less and less as he approaches the attracting object of his search; just as a good dog may for a time be baffled; in his eagerness overshooting the mark, but quickly returning to the scented track.

Favourable circumstances are that the weather be propitious for the flight of the male, that the wind be gently, but steadily, blowing in one direction, such as the West, South-west, or South; and, above all, that the female be "calling," which may be known by her general aspect, by her listless, not-inclined-to-move look, by a faint tremor of the wings, by her abdomen being elongated and perhaps curved forwards, and by protrusion of the last segment through the furry coat, or rather by the down being drawn away so as to denude it.

The time of year (as well as the locality) must be chosen so that we may be sure that the perfect males are really to be met with; the time of day will depend much on the species it is intended to attract. Some, such as *Sesia*, *Endromis*, *Saturnia*, *Oryzia*, *Drepana*, &c., will fly in the hot sunshine of the morning and afternoon; the *Lasiocampæ*, will generally make their appearance in the afternoon; the Swifts just before dusk; the bulk of the *Geometræ* about dark, the *Noctuæ*, later on in the evening; *O. pudibunda* comes freely towards midnight, and, I believe, the Prominents later still; therefore if it be a rarity we desire to entice, it may be worth

while to sit up throughout a favourable night to find out the time; after that, we may save ourselves time by visiting the scene of operations at the proper moment.

The food-plant of the future larva, is the next natural attraction. The perfect insects are rarely found at any great distance from it, and by visiting the localities in which the food-plant occurs, we stand the best chance of securing impregnated female moths.

Flowers of various kinds act wonderfully as alluring baits. Of these, sallow-bloom in spring, and ivy-bloom in the autumn, are the greatest favourites with collectors.

Sallow-bloom.—First a locality of promise must be found, where sallow-bushes are not too numerous (for, in that case, the insects will be inconveniently widely distributed), nor too tall, for they are then awkward to work, and are best treated by shaking over a sheet:—they should be well covered with the fresh, full bloom of either male or female catkins, for it is a great mistake to suppose the latter unproductive, the collector may then cautiously set to work, taking care to disturb the insects as little as possible, on favourable evenings—that is, when the wind is not in the East, though, generally speaking, wind is not unfavourable unless it be too boisterous. He should be provided with lantern (a “bull’s-eye” is best for the purpose, because it concentrates the light), net, a hooked stick, boxes, and killing apparatus; or, better still, with a stick to the top of which the lantern can be fixed at an angle of about 25° , and a small shallow net some inches below that, at about 20° , the ring of the net being just in advance

of the lantern. The accompanying cut will give the reader an idea of what is intended. The object is, that though at first the sallow visitors are sprightly enough, they soon become more or less intoxicated with the nectar, and frequently fall when the light first glares upon them, so that by the apparatus mentioned the odds are greatly in favour of the net intercepting them. If, however, an insect is seen feasting—perhaps

its glistening eyes first attract our attention—it may be gently tapped with the stick into the net below, for they usually fall plump downwards, helplessly tipsy. (This is sad, very sad! Could not somebody, with the laudable view of enforcing moth morality, bring in a permissive prohibitory bill to abolish sallow- and ivy-bloom, and shut up demoralizing flowers generally?). The ordinary lantern and net, however, answer the purpose

very well, the former being in the left, the latter in the right hand; the bottom of the bag being pulled toward the handle-end of the stick, and held there, so as to keep it out of the way, and also render the net more shallow—for a deep net is not required—in fact, a small shallow net specially made for the purpose is the best. The captures should then be further stupified, if necessary, with chloroform, pinned, treated with oxalic acid, and stuck in our collecting box; or they may be transferred for a sojourn in the cyanide bottle at option. When sallows are high and in large bushes, branches cut off before dusk and stuck into the ground in suitable wood-paths, are very attractive and easily examined; but, if this be not done, the easiest and quickest, and consequently the most productive way of working high sallows (and ivy too) is with a hooked stick and inverted large umbrella, tapping or gently shaking each branch of willow, and very gently shaking ivy, over the umbrella, when the moths are sure to fall in. The gentle shaking is on the principle of taking care of the goose that lays the golden eggs, for the bloom easily falls off.

A tray for intercepting the fallen moths, suspended round the neck, like those worn by the old-fashioned peripatetic fruit sellers, has been used with success.

A sheet—the larger the better—prepared by cutting a circular piece out of the centre and slitting it up from one of the sides to the middle aperture, may, in suitable localities, be adopted; but it is not everywhere that this can be conveniently applied, either the nature of the ground or surrounding bushes interfering with its use. Where applicable, it may be drawn round the bush at starting, in which case, having carefully made our search by the aid of the lantern, we may proceed to shake with good chances of success. Such insects as fall may be selected from the sheet. A good large clap net placed on the ground under the part searched, is better than nothing. *En passant*, the catkins which drop should be deposited in an appropriate receptacle, and an eye should be kept open for larvæ.

By day, in the sun-shine, *Brephos parthenias* and *Adela cuprella* frequent willow-bloom.

In the evening, the whole troop of *Tæniocampæ*, and other spring *Noctuæ*, such as *T. piniperda* and *X. lithorhiza*, resort to the sign of "The Catkin," and there convivially hob-nob with their hibernated relatives, *Glæa*, *Scopelosoma*, *Dasycampa*, *Hoporina*, *Cloantha*, *Calocampa*, *Xylina*, and even *Laphygma exigua*, the party being usually augmented by interlopers, as *Amphiphysa*, *Agrotis*, *Gonoptera*, and *Peronea*, with a sprinkling of Geometers, *A. badiata*, *H. progemmaria*, *S. illunaria*, and *Eup. abbreviata* being the vernal, *Cidaria psitticata* and *miata*, the

hibernated representatives. The most aristocratic visitors are *L. exigua*, *G. erythrocephala*, *D. rubiginea*, *X. conformis*, and no doubt *Zinckenii*; but these four last more properly belong to ivy.

Ivy-bloom may be similarly worked, but the sheet used need not be slit. Shaking, too, will assist us more than at the sallows. It may also be necessary to provide ourselves with a light ladder when the ivy is high up. A very large number of species visit this bloom, which is even more stupefying than sallow in its effects on the moth tribe.

At ivy may be met with all those *Orthosidæ* which appear in autumn. These will, of course, now be in their prime. We shall also meet with a good sprinkling of others, such as *Noctua*, *Glæa*, *Triphaena ianthina*, *Hadena protea*, *Polia flavicincta*, *Phlogophora*, *Hoparina*, *Miselia aprilina* and *oxyacanthæ*, *Xylina*, *Calocampa*, the autumnal *Geometræ*, *N. rostralis*, *S. ferrugalis*, *H. albistrigalis*, *S. hybridalis*, &c.

By day, the scarce *Vanessa Antiopa* has visited the ivy-bloom, which is a delight also to other *Vanessæ*, and to *Cynthia*. *Noctuæ* may be collected on rag-wort, heather, germander, marjoram, grass, and rush-bloom, after dusk, as they settle on these flowers, as at ivy and sallow; but bramble, catchfly, bugloss, and most others, must be watched at dusk, and the moths netted as they hover at the flowers, since they seldom settle freely; and of course the *Sphingidæ* and the species of *Polia*, *Dianthæcia*, *Cucullia*, and *Plusia* must be taken on the wing. The following flowers are very attractive:—

Heather (*Calluna*)—*Cynthia cardui* (by day), *Lithosia complana*, *Agrotis agathina* and *tritici*, *Noctua glareosa*, *Dahlia*, and *neglecta*, *H. dipsacea*, *P. festuca*, *S. anomala*, *Ephyræ*, *N. viridata*, *S. dubitata*, *C. silacea* and *testata*, *P. hippocastanaria*, *A. ericetaria*, *H. costæstrigalis*, *C. pinetellus*, *S. pariana*: (*Erica*)—*A. tritici* and *porphyrea*.

RAGWORT (on the coast)—*Leucania conigera* and *straminea*, *H. micacea* and *nictitans*, *H. popularis*, *C. graminis*, *C. Haworthi*, *L. cespitis*, *M. furva*, *M. literosa*, *A. valligera*, *lunigera*, *tritici*, *obelisca*, *præcox*, *pyrophila*, *lucernea*, *cursoria*, *nigricans*, *T. ianthina*, *interjecta*, *N. glareosa*, *X. cerago*, *fluvago* and *citrago*, *S. anomala*, and many *Depressariæ*. NOTE.—Ragwort, inland, does not appear to be very attractive.

VIPER'S BUGLOSS—*M. stellatarum*, *S. chrysidiformis* (by day), *N. saponariæ*, *M. anceps*, *L. comma*, *P. serena*, *A. tincta*, *advena*, *C. umbratica*, *H. marginata*, *H. urtica*, *P. orichalcea*, *V-aureum*, and swarms of common *Agrotæ*, *Leucaniæ*, *Caradrinæ*, &c.

CATCHFLY (*Silene inflata*)—*S. fuciformis*, *Leucania comma*, *M. anceps*, *A. corticea*, *D. carpophaga*, *cucubali*, *conspersa*, *A. tincta*, and *advena*, *N. bella*, *H. urticæ*, *P. ista*, *bractea*, and *V-aureum*, *P. serena*; —(*Silene maritima*), *D. capsophila*, *Barrettii*, *cæsia*, and *cucubali*.

BRAMBLE—*H. Janira* and *Hyperanthus*, *C. Pamphilus* and *Tithonus*, *A. Paphia* and *Adippe*, *L. Sybilla*, *T. W-album* (by day); *Leucania putrescens*?, *N. rhomboidea*, and numbers of common *Noctuæ* by night.

GRASSES (especially *Glyceria fluitans*)—*S. anomala*, *A. tritici*, *cursoria*, *valligera*, *L. impura* and *conigera*, *N. umbrosa* and *glareosa*, *T. fimbria*, *A. gemina*, *C. Haworthi*, *M. arcuosa*, and many others.

MISTLETOE (male plant)—All the early *Noctuæ* and *Geometræ*; it is even more attractive than sallow.

But besides these, a great number of flowers have their visitors; thus to mention some alphabetically:—

AARON'S ROD—*T. interjecta*, *N. bella*, *A. lunosa*, *X. citrigo*, *E. apieitaria*, *C. testata*, &c.; APPLE, various species; ARCHANGEL, *M. stellatarum* and *P. sylvanus*; ARBUTUS, *C. cardui*, *V. Atalanta*, *P. gamma*.

BARBERRY (holly leaved)—All the early things; BEAN, *Agrotis*, &c.; BERRY-BEARING ALDER, *M. anceps*, *A. basilinea*, *A. herbida*, *N. thalassina*, *E. dolobrararia*, *Eup. pulchellata*; BILBERRY; BLACKTHORN, *L. polycommata*, *A. pictaria*, *H. croceago*, *T. leucographa*, *C. chamomillæ*, *N. ditrapezium* (larva); BUCKTHORN, *S. scoliiforme*; BUGLE, *A. Selene* and *Euphrosyne*, *L. Arion*, *M. bombyliiformis* and *fueiformis* (all by day); BUGLOSS (*Lycopsis*), *H. dipsacea* (by day).

CANDY TUFT, various; CLEMATIS, *L. griseola*, *C. olivaria*, *A. rubidata*, *B. asinalis*, *B. hyalinalis*; CLOVER, *Colias*, *A. Lathonia*, *C. cardui*, *I. statice*, *A. sulphuralis*, *A. luctuosa*, *H. armigera*, and swarms of common *Noctuæ*; DRYAS OCTOPETALA, *A. Minos*; ERYNGIUM; FETID IRIS; FURZE, *H. costæstrigalis*; GERANIUM; GILIA AGGREGATA; GOLDEN-ROD, *Butterflies*, *Geometræ*, *S. pariana*.

HEMP (male)—various *Noctuæ*; HEMP-AGRIMONY, *G. C-album*; HERACLEUM, *T. mediana*; HEATH-PEA, *L. sinapis*; HOLLY, *L. argiolus*, *C. psitticata*; HONEYSUCKE, *V. Antiopa*, *C. celerio*, *S. convolvuli*, *D. galii*, *C. porcellus*, *P. bractea*, *V-aureum*, and *C. umbratica*; HOPS (perhaps to honey-dew), *E. fulvago*, *X. flavago* and *aurago*, *H. croceago*, *N. suffusa*, *M. typica*, *H. urticæ*.

JASMINE.—*C. celerio*, *M. stellatarum*, *P. bractea*; KNAPWEED, *V. C-album*, *A. Paphia* and *Adippe*, *S. ichneumoniformis* (amongst) *E. oehroleuca* (all by day).

MARKSPUR, *M. stellatarum*; LILAC, *D. lineata*; LAUREL; LIME, *Th. quercus*, *A. corticea*, *aquilina* and *ravida*, *M. furva*, and a great variety of others; LOOSESTRIPE (purple), *D. cucubali*, *P. festuca*, &c.; LOUSE-WORT, *P. Machaon*, *S. bombylifformis*; LUCERNE, *Colias*, *P. Daplidice*, *A. Lathonia*, and various other butterflies, *A. sulphuralis*, &c.; LYCHNIS, *A. decolorata*; MARJORAM, *Th. W-album*, *P. porphyralis*, *A. ornata*; MARIGOLD (French and African); MARVEL OF PERU, *C. celerio*, *S. convolvuli*; MICHAELMAS DAISY, *V. atalanta*, &c.; MUSTARD, *Th. W-album*; NASTURTIUM, *C. celerio*; ENOTHERA (moths at this are caught by the proboscis, also at PHYSIANTHUS ALBENS, a green-house plant), *S. convolvuli*, also at Pysianthus, *C. celerio*.

PASSION FLOWER, *C. nerii*; PETUNIA, *S. convolvuli*, &c.; PHLOX, *S. convolvuli*, &c.; PINK, *C. porcellus*; PORTUGAL LAUREL; PRIVET, *S. myopiformis* and *tipuliformis*, *N. ditrapezium*, *T. subsequa*; RAGGED ROBIN, *S. bombylifformis* and *fuciformis*, *I. statice* and *A. trifolii* (by day), *D. conspersa* (by night); RASPBERRY, *T. batis*, *L. conigera*; RATTLE, *M. Cinxia*, various *Noctue*; REED, *N. lutosa*, *Xanthia*; RHODODENDRON, *S. ligustri*, *C. porcellus*, *M. bombylifformis*, *D. conspersa* and *cucubali*; RUSHES, *T. derasa*, *O. suspecta*, *N. ditrapezium* and *umbrosa*, *A. fibrosa*, *L. conigera* and *pudorina*, and other *Leucania*, with plenty of common *Noctue*.

SAINFOIN, *M. albicolon*, *H. chenopodii*, *N. saponaria*, *D. carophaga*; SCABIOUS, *M. furva*, and other *Noctue*, &c.; SOAPWORT, *Dianthæciæ*, and other *Noctue*; SPURGE, *N. Lucina*, *S. culiciformis*; SWEET GALE, *S. sphegiformis*; SWEET WILLIAM, *T. derasa*, *Plusidæ*, *C. umbratica*; SYRINGA, *A. pyrophila*, &c., &c.; TEASEL, *N. subrosea*.

THISTLES—*A. cratægi*, *Vanessæ*, *Th. W-album*, *A. Aglaia*, &c. (by day), *C. Haworthi*, *C. graminis*, *M. furva* (at dusk); THYME, *L. Arion*, *A. lonicera*, *H. melanopa*, all *Pyraustæ*, *E. cingulalis* and *anguinalis* (by day); TURNCAP LILY, most attractive to the *Plusidæ*; VALERIAN (red), *C. porcellus*, *S. tipuliformis*, *P. dysodea*, *H. triplasia*; VERBENA, *D. galii*, *S. convolvuli*, *C. porcellus*, &c.

WILLOW HERB, *M. furva*, *Anceps* and *persicariæ*; WOOD BETONY, *M. fuciformis*; WOOD SAGE, *L. complana*, *A. lucerneæ*, *M. furva*, *C. alsines*, *H. marginata*, &c.; WORMWOOD; YELLOW BEDSTRAW, *Lithosia caniola* (evening); YELLOW THISTLE, *P. Actæon*.

It is a good plan to sow or plant patches of attractive flowers in our gardens, or still better in secluded spots in the haunts we are in the habit of working.

Other attractions are peaches, plums, apples, and blackberries, especially when they have burst from over-ripeness. These may be pinned.

in suitable positions as baits for butterflies. Yew-berries are the great rarity of *D. rubiginea*. The juicy buds of birch, whitethorn, blackthorn, and other bushes are attractive.

The sap which exudes from wounds in oak, birch, and other trees, as for instance, those caused by *Cossus*, are attractive to the *Vanessæ*, including *Antiopa*, to *A. Iris* and also to *Noctuæ*. Puddles, mud, &c., to *Iris* and other butterflies, *Brephos parthenias*, &c.

Aphides on the leaves of nettles, bean stalks, lime, and many other trees and herbs; the secretions of these insects in hot seasons forming the well-known "honey-dew." Sometimes *very* attractive.

Dead animals, such as stoats, weasels, and cats more particularly. I recollect once starting in company with my friend Piffard to Ongar Park Wood, with a decomposed specimen of the feline race, intended for the delectation of his purple Majesty; but though we let the cat out of the bag, and H. I. M. evidently smelt our game, we could not induce him to come within reach—perhaps the game wasn't high enough.

Dung of animals. This, as well as the previous, attracting *A. Iris* (which certainly has a depraved taste), and also *L. Alexis*.

Of artificial attractions, paste, especially when decomposed, has been found very attractive; at least a bill sticker at Folkestone complains that enormous number of moths destroy themselves in his paste tub.—I throw out the hint for what it is worth.

Putrid soapsuds have been employed by our French neighbours in lieu of sugar, for they do not find the latter profitable, owing to nearly all the sugar in France being extracted from beet, which being without smell, has but little, if any, power to attract. The German plan is, string together several quarters of apples, and having dipped them in a mixture of sugar and water, to suspend them in suitable positions.

Sugar, however, is the great medium employed in this country; here are few natural attractions that can vie with it, and it possesses the great superiority over flowers that the visitors to it come to us from all parts, congregating in a small space, where they are at once plainly visible. Numerous, indeed, have been the discoveries made through the agency of

this compound, *Leucania vitellina* [fig.] *albipuncta*, *L. album*, *extranea*, *putrescens* and *Loreyi*, *Nonagria neurica* and *brevilinea*, *Tapinostola concolor* and *Helmanni*, *C. alsines* and *L. exigua*, *Noctua flammatrix* and *sobrina*, *Hadena peregrina*, *Xylina furcifera*, and *Phlogophora empyrea*, *Glaea erythrocephala*

and *C. alchymista*, are a few examples. Various prescriptions have been extolled for their efficacy, but, as good a basis as any may be made by boiling up equal weights of **foots** sugar and treacle in a sufficient quantity of stale beer to bring the mixture to the requisite consistency; that is, it should not be too thick or it will not “work” well with the brush, nor too thin or it will run away to the ground too quickly, and the upper parts of the patch will dry up; lastly, a small quantity of rum should be added shortly before use—if too much be added, the moths will be too quickly intoxicated, will fall to the ground, and be lost among the herbage. Some collectors think proper to flavour their sugar with ratafia, anise-seed, essence of jargonelle pears, or the not easily procured essence of ginger-grass. Honey is preferred by some to sugar, but besides being more costly, it is less efficacious.

The apparatus required for sugaring is varied; the collector must take his choice of what he considers necessary, from the following:—

A sugar tin with a brush attached to the lid is sold for the purpose; but a soda-water bottle, a small gallipot for the reception of a little of the mixture, at a time, as required, and a brush of about three-quarters of an inch diameter at the bristle end, such as a fourpenny or sixpenny paint-brush, carried well wrapped up in brown paper, will answer all ends perfectly. Before use it should be well soaked in cold water to prevent the bristles coming out.

A net for sugaring is best constructed by socketing two “paragon” wires into a Y-piece, and connecting their diverging extremities with a piece of cat-gut, which will readily adapt itself to shape of a tree or other object against which it may be pushed. Bag, as usual, but not very deep. This net may be taken to pieces and packed in a small space.

A lantern. This should be fitted at the back with a tongue which may be slipped into a belt or into the waist of the trousers or the vest; or it may be suspended from one's mouth, by a piece of wire bent at two right angles, the part between the two angles being encased in a tubular bit of wood of the thickness of a drawing pencil, so that it can be grasped by the teeth; or thirdly; it may be slung round the neck, by means of a strap, on the ends of which are fastened two hooks which pass into two triangular rings soldered to the back of the lantern, either of these additions sets a hand at liberty.

The front should be of plate glass, for a "bull's-eye" concentrates the light too powerfully, and scares the flies; a darkening cover is also important. N.B.—Always look to the trimming of the lamp, &c., before starting, and *don't* forget lucifers.

A *fork*, formed by three darning needles, driven at the angles of an imaginary triangle eye foremost into a handle, is sometimes employed for impaling the very skittish *Catocala* on the sugared trees. With practice, a single darning needle may be used very efficaciously; but the readiest way of procuring them in good condition, is to stun them by striking them down with a battle-dore; when netted they quickly damage their plumage. The use of the single needle reminds me of the Scotchman, who, having dreamt that he had captured a Clifton Nonpareil upon a paling, by sticking it with a certain big pin, for years carried the *lorng* pin about with him, in the expectation of meeting with the *Catocala*. At last, one day, sure enough, he saw the Nonpareil sitting on a fence, but horror! he had forgotten his pin. Now you, my reader, would doubtless, under the circumstances, have been dreadfully excited, and have rashly made some absurd attempt to secure the prize, which would, in all probability, have got out of your clutches, with the loss of a few scales. But this was not what our Scotch friend did; he went quietly home, got his pin, returned with it to the spot, and coolly pinned the great Blue Underwing.

A *pinning box*, the usual complement of chip boxes, and killing bottle, will be required.

A *sugaring drum*, or "transferer," is considered by many indispensable. To make this, a tube of about two inches (or three, at least, for *Catocala*) in diameter, should be sawed transversely half through at about

half-an-inch from one end; in the slit thus formed, a circular valve should be made, to work so as to close up the tube if required; the other end should be *firmly* covered with strong open net-work. Then a sort of piston, corked at the end, should be made to fit the cylinder. For use, the valve is opened, and the mouth of the tube clapped over the insect, which, of course, flies towards the net-work, when the valve ought to be instantly closed; next insert the corked piston up to the valve, open the

latter, and push the insect against the net-work, pin it through one of the meshes, and then withdraw the piston with the insect stuck upon it, re-pin properly, and transfer to the collecting-box. The cut represents the apparatus sold, for the purpose.

Choice of locality. Sugaring may be employed in almost any locality, from the most barren and bleak to the most fertile and sheltered districts; the rides and clearings in woods are favourite places of resort. The heaths, sandhills, mountain sides, fens, under-cliffs, parks, borders of fields, are all productive. We should avoid situations where the foliage is dense. Trees which have been repeatedly sugared, are always more profitable than those newly tried; and we should therefore be cautious about rushing off to a fresh spot, for the reason that we have been unsuccessful. We should not give up dirty water until we are sure we can get a clean liquid.

Choice of evening. Circumstances to be regarded as unfavourable are east winds, or a too boisterous wind, bright moon, unseasonably cold weather, ground fogs, the counteracting effect of certain blossoms and of honey-dew, untried districts, abundance of ear-wigs, wood-lice, slugs, &c., the condition of the atmosphere *after* a thunder-storm. Favourable, are warm, dark nights. clouded sky but the air clear near the earth, previous hot weather, moderate wind blowing steadily in one direction, such as W., S.W., or S., thunder in the air, and even during the continuance of a thunder-storm, for in spite of pelting rain, insects will sometimes swarm at sugar. On such a night, I remember counting over 150 of various kinds on two small patches—rather embarrassing! **NOTE.**—Though moonlight nights are *usually* unprofitable, I once saw *Noctuæ* swarming at sugar about 1 a.m., when the atmosphere was as clear as space, and the luminary of the harvest denomination. **N.B.**—The presence of Bats and Night-jars are good signs.

Time for Sugaring. Sugar should be got on before dusk, but not too soon before, or its virtues and sweetness will be expended on the desert air; when the first cockchafer or “lousy watchman” booms past us, we should be reminded that it is at once time to begin to lay on our sweets: many leave their sugared trees for home at too early an hour: it should be remembered that some species fly at one hour, others at another, and that a succession of visitors arrive almost from dusk to dawn.

Modus operandi. We should sugar at intervals of about ten yards, choosing such trees as have the roughest bark, as oak, elm, and poplar; smooth ones, such as beech, horse chestnut, sycamore, and lime, do not, as a rule, pay. The sugar should be put on these in a long narrow streak

reaching from shoulder height down to within a foot of the ground; it should be applied to the sheltered side, and it has been suggested that a dab or two should also be applied to the side exposed to the wind, the better to ensure the dissemination of the scent. When there are no trees in the locality, palings (but they ought to be open ones, or the scent of the sugar will not be wafted away) may be sugared; if these be not present, we may sugar the foliage of bushes, reeds, or the flowers of ragwort, *Umbellifera*, knapweed, bramble, thistle stalks, &c., marking the spot in some way that we may not overlook it—pieces of white paper answer the purpose. But in some barren spots, not even this class of herbage is present. On the sand hills, for instance, the method is to tie tufts of *Ammophila* into knots and sugar these; where the grass is very short, we must carry laths or boughs to the scene of operations, for the application of our sweets; and if not that, we must e'en content ourselves with sugared rags (conveyed to the spot in tins), laying them out to the best advantage we can, or apply our nectar to the bare stones.

Capturing insects off the sugar may be effected by the pinning box, the battledore, or the fork already mentioned; but generally there is no difficulty in boxing them in the ordinary way; that is, take the bottom of the chip box between the thumb and little finger, the lid between the index and third finger, the second finger resting on the top of the lid, then apply at one point a portion of the circumference of the lid to a corresponding part of the box itself:—with very little practice, the box can be quickly opened and shut with one hand; another way is to put the cyanide bottle under them, and tap them in; if they be very skittish, they must be netted or knocked down as they fly off. In examining the sugar, we should shut off the light while approaching a tree; we should then place the triangular net underneath the patch, holding it in position by our knee, and, having gently turned on the lantern, proceed to box such moths as may be considered worth taking.

Captures at sugar are too numerous to mention; almost all the night-flying *Noctuæ* may be taken in this way; but a few, such as, for example, *Luperina*, *Dasypolia*, &c., are more readily attracted by light, while others, as the *Dianthæciæ*, *Cucullia*, &c., are not easily tempted away from the flowers they frequent.

Besides the *Noctuæ*, however, *Sphingidæ*, such as *C. porcellus* and *clpeonor*, have been known to visit the sugar, so also *Cossus*. The *Lithosidæ* are not unfrequently to be met with, many Geometers and Pyrales are attracted, as well as *Tortrices*, *Phycidæ*, *Crambidæ* and many Tineina. also beetles, centipedes, slugs, field mice, and bats, not to mention human urchins who, at "the marshes," used to lick up the rum compound to inebriation, until we thought of tartar emetic.

NOTE.—Whilst sugaring, one must be on the look-out for other visitors, for Bos, attracted by our lantern, sometimes puts in an unexpected appearance; and had it not been for suddenly “dousing the glim,” accompanied by a simultaneous “leap in the dark,” on the occasion of a pair of horses coming full gallop at my light, it is more than probable that the “Guide” would never have appeared.

By day, sugaring is used to attract *Vanessæ* and other butterflies.

The etiquette of sugaring. In the neighbourhood of large towns the beat which the collector has baited is considered his, for the evening only. But in large forests or other localities where there is unlimited space for the selection of suitable spots, the beat chosen is retained by the same collector during the whole of his sojourn. I need hardly add that it is an ungentlemanly, nay dishonest, act to capture insects, without permission, off another's sugar. To prevent mistakes, it is best to affix one's name (with date) on a card to the first and last trees, or whatever else, of our run.

A New Moth Trap has been recently suggested in the “Entomologist's Monthly.” It is carried out in the manner shown in the annexed cut. A round tin box (A A) is fitted with a moveable cone of perforated zinc (B), which is truncated at the apex, so as to leave an opening at (C). The bottom of the box is partitioned off by means of another piece of perforated zinc (D) kept in place by the supports (E E), underneath which is a space (F) for the reception of a piece of flannel soaked in sugar and rum. To get at the contents, all that is necessary, is to remove the cone of zinc. A few dead leaves might be placed at the bottom, amongst which the insects might hide their diminished heads, after having been so miserably taken in. Of course, a modification of this contrivance could be applied for trapping by means of the virgin female.

Light is a very different kind of attraction. To this, insects can hardly be said to come from choice, having once got their sight dazed with

the glare, they are impelled to it against their will; this is pretty evident from their sometimes frantic through futile attempts to get away from its influence, and by the quietness with which they settle down in some dark corner.

Street lamps first come under notice, and they may be worked with great profit. The annexed cut represents a very ingenious invention which is invaluable for securing

moths off gas-lamps. It consists of a bottle charged with cyanide of potassium, which has a band of India rubber round the rim to prevent it coming in contact with the lamp glasses. It is held by a band of metal which is prolonged into a ferrule for the reception of a handle of suit-

able length. For use, the bung should be removed and the mouth of the bottle placed over the insects, which will quickly be stupified and fall into the bottle. N.B.—The metal band and ferrule may be detached, leaving a killing-bottle for ordinary purposes.

Chip boxes are also very useful; for insects which have flown at night are remarkably quiet—seem grateful to change their position for the dark interior of the box.

Some species are visible enough on the lamps, the *Eupitheciæ*, for instance, with their wings spread to their fullest extent and pressed flat on the glass; various species of *Acidalia*, *Hibernia*, *Oporabia*, *Emmelesia*, and *Scotosia*, as well as *Camptogramma fluviala* and the *Drepanæ*, the *Xanthiæ* also, and the species of *Cosmia* and *Tethea*, which, by the way, frequently, in their excitement, get inside the lamp to their manifest detriment. *Catocala nupta* rests on the glass, and, taking its size into consideration, does not require, for detection, any great amount of careful searching. Several species of *Deltoides*, *Pyrallites*, *Crambidæ*, and *Phycidæ*, too, settle on the glass, the latter having an unfortunate propensity for getting inside. Light seems to have a specially powerful attraction for the last four groups, the commoner species being often found on the lamps in numbers, while such plums as *Madopa salicalis* and *Spilodes sticticalis* are occasionally found.

To find all these, the lamps require but little examination, and even others that hang to the uprights, such as *Hemerophila abruptaria*, *Ti-*

mandra amataria, are easily enough seen; so also are those species which, whenever they settle, rest with their wings erect, as *Selenia*, *Ennomos*, and *Cidaria miata*.

The real difficulty is to find them when they have chosen the dark outside of the framework, especially underneath, and still more when they have retreated to the supports under the base of the lamp, as *Sterrha sacrum* has been known to do. Then great care and circumspection are required in scrutinising the different parts, or otherwise many moths will be passed over. Good eyesight, sharpened by practice, and patience, will meet with the most rewards. If we are in doubt as to the nature of any particular patch which may arrest our attention, and which we may be unable to dislodge, the post must be swarmed in order that we may get a closer sight of it; indeed, the most successful hunters climb every post on favourable nights, holding on by the knees, calves, feet, and one hand, while they box with the other; of course, this requires practice, and is not well adapted for portly or elderly gentlemen—putting ladies out of the question.

Many of the species already mentioned will sometimes take up such positions, and most of the *Noctuæ* do so, when they can make up their minds to leave off tearing round and round the lamp in a frantic and utterly demented manner. Here also *Hepialus sylvinus*, *Pacilocampa populi*, and *Gastropacha quercifolia*, will sometimes settle, while *Chesias spartiata* folds its wings closely together, as though striving to hide under the narrow frame, and *Pelurga comitata* not being able to do so, hangs on to the bottom.

But those requiring the utmost acuteness of vision, are the *Pseudo-Bombyces* generally to be found upon the darkest parts of the frame, *Peridea trepida* exactly like a patch of mud, *Ptilodontis palpina*, resembling a bit of dry bramble stick, and *Petasia cassinea* a bit of chip, while the close resemblance of *Notodonta camolina* and some others to dead and dry leaves, is very remarkable. For these, little short of actual touching will suffice, but they are tolerable incentives to a climb.

Some species, the *Smerinths* for instance, and *Pygæra bucephala* have an absurd habit of creeping up underneath, and resting with their heads just in the holes left to supply air to the lamps, and look as though they were actuated by curiosity to see what is going on inside; occasionally also *Zenzera æsculi*, *Arctia villica*, and probably most of the night flying Bombyces may be found.

By a wonderful instinct, spiders are constant visitors to, or rather residents at, gas lamps, and they thrive and get fat on so rich a ground. A notice of ejection served upon them, and promptly acted on, will save

many a moth from being frightened away, and more from being destroyed; but a shapeless bundle in a web will sometimes, by careful unrolling, prove to be a good moth in an almost uninjured state.

Atrops, *convolvuli*, and *galii*, have been known to enter houses attracted by the light, and *celerio* seems to have a fancy for settling down near windows ready to be taken the next day.

Luperina cespitis has been taken not uncommonly by the attraction of the lamps carried for sugaring, *Geometra papilionaria* also, and, at times, numbers of *Geometra*.

A net for working street lamps may be made in the manner shown in the annexed cut. The frame should be made of wire, terminating in a ferrule for the reception of the handle; the straight side (*b*) is for taking insects off the flat glass; the bend at (*c*) is made to correspond with the rails of the lamp, and the apex (*a*) for getting at the under parts of the lamp.

The lamplighter is a man with whom we should be on friendly terms;—by making it worth his while to serve us, instructing him as to boxing and selecting the species, and placing a supply of boxes at his disposal, we may often acquire, without trouble, an abundance of insects. It must be expected that he will at first bring us enough Poplar hawks, and Tiger moths to make a breakfast off, but, if he be an intelligent man, this will soon wear off, and after a time he will know “a good ‘un” from “a bad ‘un” as well as we do. Still more advisable is it, to secure the services of a lighthouse man, for the chances of getting rare, and even new species are much enhanced, not only by the situation in which these edifices are generally erected, but also by the intensity of the light. A “five pound note” would doubtless be a welcome addition to the income of such a man, and would not be badly laid out by any one having the paper to spare.

NOTE.—The revolving lighthouses so much in vogue seem to be useless as an attraction for moths. If a steady light is attainable, it is impossible to guess at the probable results; for, although the story of the lighthouse on the south coast, from which the light-keeper was obliged to sweep the moths with a broom, because they obscured the light, is obviously apocryphal, it may reasonably be supposed that, in a rich locality, very large numbers of moths would be obtained, the great prize *Ennomos alniaria* being among the possibilities. In such a situation, *Lithosia caniola* has been taken, also *Agrotis lunigera*, *obelisca*, *agathina*, *præcox* and *lucerneæ*, *Mamestra furva*, *Epunda lichenea*, *Dasypolia templi*, *Dianthæcia capsophila*, and *Barrettii*, besides heaps of other good things.

Apparatus for attracting insects to light, may be simple or complicated, on a small or large scale. The simplest plan is to place a moderator lamp on a table facing an open window, which looks out on to a likely locality, as a fen, heath, wood, or sandhills, for example, on a favourable evening, and then wait with net at hand for visitors. Mr. Stainton considers that a strong light should, in addition, be placed outside the window, in order to bring the insects within the focus of the inner lamp. This plan, which requires the presence of an operator, was not smart enough for our Transatlantic cousins, and an invention was therefore completed by Mr. Glover, of Washington, U.S., which would "CATCH MOTHS ALL NIGHT LONG WITHOUT ANY TROUBLE TO THE OWNER."

The American moth trap, the mechanism of which is explained in the diagrams which follow, has met with a fair amount of success in this country; and will, doubtless, when better appreciated, become more

generally adopted as a ready means of collecting the perfect insect. The following explanatory notes will, perhaps, enable the collector to master this wonderful trap:—A B C D is a box having a partition (I F) for the lamp (K) to rest on, behind the latter being a strong reflector (L). It is open at A E, also at H G (for the lamp chimney to pass through), and at F C for the drawer M; M is fitted with a glass slide (O), running along in a groove, and with a Venetian blind-like apparatus (P P) the laths of which are kept in position by side strips, indicated by dotted lines (Q Q), dropping loosely on to the rests (R R). It is also fitted with a small draw (N) stopped by the block (Y) for layers of flannel (soaked with chloroform when required).

$\Delta(z)I$ is a quadrilateral sheet of glass of the width of the box; ES is another piece of glass of the shape of a triangle with the apex cut off,

and ΔESZ (*bis*) are two other glasses shaped like ES .—the four pieces AI , ΔESZ (*bis*), and ES being arranged and fixed (as shown in the accessory perspective figure) in such a manner that, viewed from the point v , they form a hollow, four-sided pyramid, the apex of which is wanting, as shown in both diagrams at $z s$. v , T , and x are

arrows indicating the direction an insect flying towards the lamp (κ) must unavoidably take.

To set the trap, all that is necessary is—1. To light the lamp. 2. Push in the drawers (m and n). 3. Pull out the glass slide (o). As seen by the directions of the arrows (T , v , x), any insect flying towards the lamp (κ) is bound to go into the trap, even though its flight be not directed to the central aperture ($z s$); once in, it must go down to the darker regions, where, having got out of the focus of the light, it will calmly settle down; but, even if it do not, the odds against its escape are something tremendous. On the same principle a room may, of course, be readily fitted up.

When considered advisable to examine the contents, blow down any insects which may be fluttering on the glass, and push in the slide (o); then remove the drawer (m) and quickly replace a duplicate drawer in its place.

The small hours are the best for working light, for but few insects visit it till after 10.30 or 11 p.m.; we should therefore *commence* operations towards midnight.

White surfaces, as sheets or other linen hung out to dry, have often been known to attract *S. convolvuli*, for instance. The action is, I expect, at dark similar to that of light, but by day insects doubtless sun themselves on chalk and other white or whitish substances, for the greater amount of heat they thus secure. Some collectors “moth” in the evening by carrying a white handkerchief at the end of a stick, for attracting purposes, in one hand, and a net in the other.

Management.

Female Moths, when found at rest, especially if they appear to have recently emerged from the chrysalis, and, still more particularly, if the species be rare, or when they have come out in our cages, should, when desirable, be enclosed in gauze-covered cages, and kept, for the purpose of attracting males, till the time of day or night comes round for the species to fly.

When taken on the wing, a female is pretty sure to be impregnated, and in the event of our wishing to possess ourselves of the egg, she should be kept alive, and treated as recommended at page 6 *ante*; indeed, whenever we capture a female, the first question we should ask ourselves is, "IS IT WORTH OUR WHILE TO BREED FROM THIS?" and the rarer the species, the more emphatically affirmative should the answer be, for of all modes of getting together insects there is not, without a single exception, one which, for the completeness of its instruction, combined with charming occupation and some thousands per cent profit return on the outlay in the shape of bred specimens, can in any way compare with breeding from the egg; and, moreover, we ought to look upon collecting the Perfect insect, not so much as a method of procuring cabinet specimens, but rather as the readiest means of obtaining the really valuable *matériel* which, with judgment and care, is the key to a true knowledge of the natural history of the *Lepidoptera*.

Inducing Lepidoptera to pair should be conducted on the principles inculcated for laying (see page 5 *ante*), where similar conditions are required. When it is desired to obtain hybrid eggs, as, say, between *Smerinthus ocellatus* and *populi*, a ♂ *ocellatus* should be placed in a cage with one or more *populi* ♀; and a ♂ *populi* with one or more *ocellatus* ♀ in a separate cage, and these two cages should be kept close together. No more need here be said on this score, *verb. sat.*

Although the subjects of stupifying and killing have been touched upon so far as they relate to field-work, a little more is necessary concerning them.

Stupifying insects may be effected by chloroform, though benzole will answer the purpose very well, and is much cheaper, but it should be borne in mind that neither of these agents should be employed to *kill*, or the result will be a rigidity which will render setting very difficult, if not altogether impossible. Generally speaking, we should not permit the fluid to touch the insect operated on, but, with large moths, it will sometimes be advisable to depart from this rule, in order that the effects may be more speedy, and, in their cases, we may apply a drop of the fluid to

the rostrum, or along the spiracles, of the insect, which will thereby soon be rendered powerless. Again, it must be remembered that moths do not dislike the odour of chloroform, if the vapour be applied in a diluted form, and that they usually remain quiet until insensibility steals upon them, and causes them to relax their foot-hold and drop. N.B.—Chloroform is better kept in an inverted well-corked bottle than in the most accurately fitting stoppered one.

Various methods of killing have been advocated. The cyanide bottle already mentioned, is certainly the handiest on the field; but at home we shall find the “laurel jar” and ammonia bottle the most efficacious for the purpose of despatching such captures as are brought home boxed.

The cyanide may, however, be thus used with advantage: Tear off a bit of blotting paper about a twelfth of a square inch in superficies, and, holding it with pincers, dip it into a bottle containing a strong solution of cyanide of potassium, allowing it to absorb little or much poison, according to the size of the patient; then, opening the lid of the box a trifle, drop and shut in the prepared piece of paper. *Geometræ* and small things should only be stupefied thus, then pinned and pricked with a saturated solution of oxalic acid by means of a steel pen from which one nib has been broken off. *Noctuæ* should be left till next morning, when they will be found in splendid condition for setting.

The ammonia bottle is one the mouth of which is sufficiently large to readily admit the hand. A few knobs of solid sesqui-carbonate of ammonia may be introduced with the pill-boxes and their contents, and, if the salt be in good condition (which may be ensured by keeping it in a carefully corked vessel, mouth downwards), speedy suffocation will result. This plan is most applicable to small insects—*Geometræ*, *Tortricæ*, and such like. The insects may, if desired, be taken out in half-an-hour, but they will come to no harm, if left over night and removed in the morning; indeed, they will then be in the most delightfully relaxed condition for setting. A word of warning, though, is necessary—it is, that they should be exposed to the air for half-an-hour before proceeding to pin them, otherwise, much annoyance may be caused by subsequent corrosion and brittleness of the pins. Another very important point to remember is, that many of our green insects are much changed by the action of ammonia, and that it is not advisable to submit these to the fumes of it, unless our object be that of surprising the public with the production of orange or other varieties. *L. pectinitaria*, *Eup. rectangulata*, *coronata*, &c., are varied extensively by the process. It has been noted that unless the ammonia be carefully kept, it will soon lose its virtue. A substitute for this is strong liquid ammonia, but considering that it contains about

700 volumes of the gas compressed into one, the necessity of keeping it cool will be evident. It is quite out of the question for out-door use, but, at home, a few drops on sponge or blotting-paper may be used for charging the killing bottle. MEM.—Air the boxes before using again, for a faint smell of ammonia, though insufficient to suffocate, will be quite enough to cause restlessness.

A camphor jar is sometimes employed for killing, but it won't do.

To make a laurel jar, procure a glass bottle (or jar)—the larger the better—having a mouth of such a diameter, that the hand may pass through with ease; then (the spring is the best time, for the poison is then more active) gather a good supply of young laurel leaves, but, to prevent the subsequent mildewing of the specimens, it is very important that they should not be gathered in the dewy morning, or when the weather is at all wet; then wipe and cut up the leaves into strips, and bruise in a mortar, or pound them well with a rolling-pin, for unless this be done the two principles which go to form the poison (just as with the flavour of the bitter almond), will not act on one another; strew the bottom of the bottle with a layer of the bruised strips, then place on a circular piece of muslin; after that more strips, and so on alternately, until the bottle is rather more than a third full, the last layer being muslin or blotting-paper. Into this vessel, the boxes containing insects, with their lids slightly opened (or to obviate this trouble, an eyelet may be previously let into the lid of each), may be placed, and the mouth closed with a stopper or bung, whichever is preferred. Some quiet their captures with chloroform before using the laurel-bottle.

Brimstone matches, when it so happens that, from accident or other cause, we are destitute of killing apparatus, are to be found in even the most uncivilized districts of these isles. If half-a-dozen of these belighted and pushed under an inverted tumbler, containing the insects to be despatched, suffocation will ensue; but green insects must not, on any account, be subjected to the process.

If the sun be shining fiercely the insect may be put in an open chip-box against the window, when it will quickly die.

The flame of a candle or lamp applied to the bottom of a box containing an insect will, in like manner, rapidly destroy life.

A needle made hot by putting one end in the flame of a candle, the other being inserted into the insect, is another barbarous method.

Pinching, when neatly managed, leaves very little evidence of the rough usage, but it requires a good deal of practice before perfection is acquired. The wings of the insect should be got up over the back, if possible, before the operation, for a moment, so that the under-side of the

thorax may be more easily accessible, between the two sides of the net tightly strained together, and then the upper-side of the thorax should be touched sharply with a finger-nail; but "pinching" is a barbarous idea after all.

But tobacco smoke, if the collector be a smoker, is the most convenient of all.

For relaxing insects, the laurel bottle, with the addition of a cork lining round the sides, to which the insects are to be pinned, is very useful, and the contents will remain in a beautifully relaxed condition for a considerable period, but it should be recollected that after a time, a tendency to grease and to mould will be observable, and they should therefore not be allowed to remain too long in the fumes.

A more simple plan may be extemporised for use, when on a collecting expedition. We will suppose that, having returned to our quarters late from sugaring or some other mode of collecting, we have more captures than we care about setting over night. It will then be found most convenient to kill, and pin our captures on to a piece of cork, and on this to float them in a wash-hand basin and cover over with a wet towel, taking care to secure the latter from touching the insects. The moths will be found in perfect order for setting in the morning. By this means we may relax insects which have already become stiff, though damp sand covered with blotting paper is more generally employed for the purpose. Either of these procedures will, upon occasion, answer the purpose of a laurel-jar; but mouldiness will result, unless we are careful to set our captures within a reasonable time, say, four-and-twenty hours, but the sooner the better. N.B.—Heat does not appear to accelerate the relaxing power of damp air.

Pinning, when properly carried out, not only adds much to the

appearance of the specimen, but renders setting comparatively easy. Moths, from the size of a large *Tortrix* upwards, may be gently rested (not squeezed) between the finger and thumb of the left hand, the head looking forwards and to the right; the right hand may then operate with a pin of suitable size; the centre of the thorax should be first pierced, and the pin brought out between the coxæ of the third pair of legs. If the medial line has been well kept, so that the pin stands upright (the head of it slant-

ing a little forwards in the unset specimen) we should be satisfied ; the pin should then be pressed through, until, as we compute, there will be sufficient of the pin end beneath, to steady well the insect (when set) in the cabinet, without the tips of its wings quite touching the papered cork.

Small insects should be placed straightwise on blotting paper, and carefully pinned without handling ; the pins may then be driven through to the required distance, on a piece of soft cork. Direction of the pin the same as above.

Entomological pins are made specially for the purpose. The following sizes are recommended :—

For *Sphinges* (size of *A. Atropos*) No. 11, (*S. ligustri*) No. 12, (*Sm. tiliæ*) No. 13.

For *Bombyces* (*Cossus*) No. 13, (*P. nubeculosa*) No. 6, (*Clostera*) No. 5.

For *Noctuæ* (*A. nebulosa*) No. 6, (*Th. batis*) No. 5, (*A. oculea*) No. 8.

For *Geometræ* (*O. sambucaria*) No. 17, (*E. tiliaria*) No. 15, (*A. osseata*) No. 10.

For *Pyrales* (*Botys*) No. 15, (*Pyrausta*) No. 10.

For *Tortrices* and *Tineina*, Nos. 10, 18, 19, and 20.

I, myself, consider Nos. 8 and 10, by far the most generally useful pins. No. 10 is always adopted by me, where practicable. A proportionally stout and short pin should be used in these days of removing forceps.

It should be remembered that the thoraces of many species are very hard and shiny, and that the pin point must therefore be kept steady, or it will glance off, and scratch away some of the plumes. Another thing to be well borne in mind, is that some moths will bleed when pinned, and their green or yellow juice must be quickly absorbed by touching gently with a piece of blotting paper, else serious damage may ensue ; the orifices, both above and below, should be looked to for this bleeding.

Perhaps it may also be mentioned here that some insects, especially if killed too soon, eject a coloured meconium which is very damaging if it gets upon any part of their surfaces ; but still it is very necessary with some species to despatch them as soon as possible after emerging ; for instance, if *Macrogaster arundinis* be kept alive for any length of time, we shall, in all probability, find that it has made use of its long body to sleek down its wings to their utter detriment.

For the determination of species by distant correspondence, it is

not always necessary to trust a supposed rarity to the tender mercies of the post. If a life-like figure can be drawn or painted, it may be enclosed in an explanatory letter, and thus, much care and anxiety may be averted. In the case of small insects it is better to draw them on a magnified scale, and to indicate their exact length

and breadth in the manner shown in the annexed cut.

Transmission of Lepidoptera by post. In preparing a box for the post, care should be taken to put in the moths firmly, also to cross-pin all bodies of even moderate dimensions; the employment of cotton wool, under or over the insects, much endangers the safety of the legs and antennæ; but there is no objection to fixing "traps" of finely pulled out wool, in the four corners of the box, to catch anything which may become detached in transit. It is always safest [see fig.] to pack, with wool (c), the box (a) containing the insects, within another larger box (b), and this again may be wadded (d) before wrapping up; in the last place, a buckram (best) or parchment label for the address and stamps, should be tied on with twine or thin string.

Postal boxes should be made with the grain of the wood of the top and bottom running *transversely* to the length, by which their strength is enormously increased. In other respects, size, shape, &c., it is a matter of option, though perhaps the shape most difficult for the P. O. authorities to stamp, and therefore best for the purpose, is spherical as in the annexed figure.

Chip boxes may be strengthened for postal use, by glueing an upright piece of wood, somewhere about the centre of the bottom, in such a manner that, when the lid is closed, it rests upon the opposite end of it; or, if nested and shut one in another, their power of resistance is greatly improved, especially if instead of doing up neatly, we roll it up in wool and paper, like a ball. Tin boxes are also useful for the service, as they cannot well get smashed.

Observation.

It is much to be desired that collectors should observe and enter into their "Lepidopterist's Register" or their diaries, any facts connected with the Natural History of Moths and Butterflies, which may come under their notice, or still better, publish them to the world in the Entomological periodicals. The habits of the perfect insects are well worth study: their modes of flight, vary even in the same species, according to the object for which they are on the wing; the attitudes assumed when wing-drying, at rest, pairing, laying, feeding; the times of year and day at which the same occur; the nature of localities, the longitude, latitude, altitude, soil, vegetation; the state of the atmosphere, favourable or unfavourable; their places of resort and retreat; hibernation; duration of life; tendency to variation, are all highly interesting; besides a train of other subjects which will suggest themselves for investigation.

There are marvellous things to observe in the *Lepidoptera*—their circulatory, respiratory, and nervous systems; their alimentary and reproductive organs; organs of flight and of special sensation; their skeletons and muscles. The neururation of the wings, too, demand special attention on the part of the Lepidopterist: here will be found valuable characters for the division of moths and butterflies into natural groups. This may, perhaps, best be studied from the wings of *Aporia crataegi*.

Then again, the plumules of Butterflies are a valuable means of specific diagnosis; those of the *Pieridæ*, as represented in the two figures to the left (of *P. napi* and *A. crataegi*), differ very considerably in form from the plumules of *S. Megæra* figured to the right of the page; whilst among the *Lycænæ* we find the so-called "battledore" scales, so distinctive of the group and of each species, except in *L. ? Bætica*, which is apparently out of place among the "Blues."

The eyes, antennæ, palpi, legs, &c., of Butterflies and Moths are also beautiful objects for the microscope, and present especial characters for the determination of species.

It is not within the scope of a little work like this, to give directions for describing the perfect insect; *that*, is a far different thing from taking descriptive notes of ova, larvæ, and pupæ, which are fleeting things as compared with the perfect insect, and the depiction of which by pen or pencil, as opportunities occur, is a source of much valuable information.

Preservation.

Of setting insects, there are not only several fashions—high, low, flat, and rounded—which will necessarily modify the process, but different manners of securing the specimens in the position we wish them permanently to assume. Of course, none of these are true to nature—do not represent an insect flying, at rest, or in any other natural attitude—but they afford us the best means of examining the various characters by which *Lepidoptera* are usually separated from one another; and, as it is quite as well to spread them out gracefully, if it be only for the purpose of making the specimens more saleable after our demise, it is advisable that we should take a glance at the methods of effecting this.

The southern plan, carried out by means of what we term “saddles” and “braces,” being that with which we are best acquainted, is here given first.

Saddles are corked boards, on which the insects are pinned and strapped down in position, until they become sufficiently dry and fit for removal. We make them by—in the first place—cutting strips of thin wood, of widths varying from three-quarters to five and a-half inches, but all of them of equal *lengths*, *i. e.*, from ten to fourteen inches, for the convenience of fitting into a setting house, of which notice will be taken hereafter, though, of course the matter is quite optional. On to one of these strips, a comparatively thick piece of cork (“*silver*” best), carefully cut, at least an eighth of an inch narrower, is glued.

NOTE.—The cork can best be prepared, *after* being fixed to the wooden slip, in which case it should not be less than half-an-inch in thickness for the narrowest saddle: but if the collector is satisfied with the width of the cork and board being the same, *or* if the cork be shaped before glueing on to the wood, a much thinner substance of it will be required.

Then rasp off the upper surface of the cork to a curve corresponding with the section of the circumference of a circle, the diameter of which is, say, two and a-half times the width of the saddle; thus, if we want a 5-inch saddle, the curve should correspond with that of a circle $12\frac{1}{2}$ inches in diameter, a 4-inch with 10 inches diameter, a 3-inch with $7\frac{1}{2}$ inches diameter, a 2-inch with 5 inches diameter, a 1-inch with $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches diameter, a $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch with $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches diameter, and so on; but these proportions are only given as approximate, the curve adopted will depend much on the fancy of the collector; the object here is to show him that the saddles should be manufactured on some system, and not anyhow. Having smoothed off the surface with glass paper, next strike the middle line with a chalked string and run a saw down this, for the guidance of a curved rat-tail file, such as is used by sculptors, with which a groove of the size suitable for the reception of the body of the insect, may soon be hollowed out. If the saddle-maker cannot procure the above-named file, there is little difficulty in cutting, or sawing out a groove. A transverse section of a saddle is shown in the annexed cut.

Blotting paper (if any be used at all for the purpose) is best adapted for covering saddles, as its soft spongy surface assists in retaining the wings in position; writing paper is too slippery. But some use transversely-ruled paper, to guide them in elevating the wings to the same level on both sides.

Braces may be quickly made as required for use, by running a pin through the broad end of a wedge-shaped bit of stiff paper; but, to ensure permanence and stability, it is a good plan to punch out little circular bits of card, which may be used thus; run the point of a stoutish pin ("short whites" are best) into one, dip it on to some shoemaker's paste, and then apply it to the broad end of the brace, and drive it through on a piece of cork; the head of the pin should slightly slant away from the small end of the brace in order to give elasticity. For large insects, cardboard braces, strengthened with cork at the broad end, may be required, or slips of paper may be strapped over the wings, and held in position by a pin at each end; but my own idea is that even the largest insect is best fixed by a mere multiplication of moderate-sized braces. Ordinary music paper is of the best stoutness, stiffness, and elasticity, for most purposes; note paper for the pugs and small species.

A setting bristle will be found invaluable. There are different ways of making it, and various materials, such as a bristle, a fibre out of a broom, a very fine beading-needle, quill cut very thin, &c., which have been employed; but none of them come anywhere near a cat's whisker, which not only possesses naturally the curve exactly suited to the purpose but cannot be beaten for elasticity. All we have to do is, after making a pin hole through a small bit of cork, to insert the thick end of the whisker, previously dipped into liquid glue, concave side downwards, and then drive a stout pin through

the cork, at an angle slightly obtuse to the bristle, in order that we may be able to exert greater pressure, if necessary.

A setting needle may be formed of a darning needle, the eye end being driven into a handle, such as a piece of cedar pencil. This should only be used to *lever* the wings into position, and should never be driven through the texture of the wing. Some prefer to hook the point by bending it in the flame of a spirit lamp.

To set out our captures we first pin them on a suitable saddle, by which is meant one that has a groove sufficiently capacious to admit the body, and rather wider than the expanded wings of the insect to be operated on. Then, the legs having been put in position, and the tongue, if necessary, drawn out, we begin by setting first the wings of one side; the setting bristle point forwards should be placed over them, the point of the pin just resting on the cork behind, the tip of the bristle touching the cork in front, the head of the pin being steadied by the forefinger, or thumb and forefinger, of the left hand; then, placing the

setting-needle under the fore-wing, we tilt or push it up to the required height, and simultaneously, by simply moving the pin head of the setting bristle forwards, at the same time driving the point slightly into the cork, we put on pressure enough to hold the wing in position; we now withdraw the setting needle, and apply a brace or two to the costa. Next, after

shifting the position of the bristle a little further back, we repeat the process on the hind-wing, and apply as many braces as we consider necessary. The tips of the wings should always be braced down. And, lastly, we set out the antennæ to our liking, and raise the body to its proper position that is, if the groove happens to be too deep; this may be done by cross pins underneath the body, but better by a brace of suitable length, placed under, and in the axis of, the abdomen, or by little grooved bits of wood, called body rests, of different thicknesses made for the purpose.

Another plan, useful after sugaring, when *Noctuæ* are numerous and not very precious, and when time is an object, enables us to get through our work more quickly. We procure a fine beading needle—as fine as a hair—the eye end stuck into a lucifer match or a bit of sealing wax, so as to leave about half an inch of the point exposed. The point of this needle may be partly run through the costa, the fore-wing rapidly raised up to the required level, and pegged down with the needle; then, after the application of a brace or two, it may be withdrawn; after that, the hind-wing will have to be similarly treated. Now, if this be done skilfully, and the insects are fresh killed, the little hole will not subsequently be noticed, even by the aid of a magnifying glass. But, if the operation be unskilfully performed, we may get a “notch wing” were we do not want one, or we may rip up the texture of the wing, if the needle be not inserted in or near one of the strong nervures.

NOTE.—Sometimes the fringes get misplaced; by gently blowing upon them they may be restored to their position. It is a bad job when any of the cilia are knocked off.

The northern plan is carried out, by cutting off pieces from a saddle, made, as above, in lengths sufficient for setting each a single insect; these are placed side by side on a strip of wood so that the insects have their wings relatively tip to tip, instead of, as in the other plan, being head to tail. The method of fixing them in position, too, is different, for pieces of thread, of the required length, are attached by one end to the woodwork, and, after the insects are put in position, several turns of thread are wound lightly round the wings, saddle and all, and fastened off in a slit made for the purpose in the wood; with practice, this process of setting may be very rapidly conducted.

Rounded setting is preferred by some for the reasons that specimens so set out, have a more attractive, though less natural, appearance than those prepared as above. There are two methods of carrying it out.

"Four strap" setting is one; four similar card braces, rather broad, longer than the length of the insect intended to be operated on, and carefully bent to the desired curve, are all that are required for setting

out the wings; this, at any rate, is an advantage. Two are first placed at a computed distance with their thin ends looking backwards and towards one another, in such a manner, that, when the moth is placed over them, the middle of the costæ of both fore and

hind-wings will rest upon them; then, as the wings are got into position, the other two braces are placed *over* the wings, a little beyond the middle of the costa, that is, nearer to the tips than the straps underneath, as in the accompanying sketch. The elasticity of the costal nervure is sufficient to keep the wings in position. In addition to the four main straps it is sometimes considered advisable to place a strap over the outer borders of the wings.

A rounded saddle is the other method. These are made by first turning a globe of soft wood, as willow, the diameter of the ball being, say, two and a-half times that of the saddle required, or whatever other proportion may be fixed on. Then, slice, from off the circumference of the ball, pieces of the required size, divide these into two; cut out, from the middle of each semi-circular piece, a width proportionate to the size of the body of the insect the saddle is intended to accommodate. Glue down these pairs of three-corned rounded bits, in position, to a suitable board, separating them by a strip of cork of the width of the body, and thus partially replacing the bit of wood cut away.

Flat setting has many great advantages over the ordinary methods, but it is very unpopular in this country, for the reason that continental specimens are set in this way, and English collectors are very sensitive on the point of having the authenticity of their captures doubted. The method, for those who like to try it, is simple enough: a groove, for the abdomen, is made in a piece of flat wood, the bottom of the groove being lined with cork; the wings, after being put into position, are kept so by the weight of little flat pieces of glass, instead of by braces or thread.

High setting, though possessing the advantage of keeping the insect very much out of the way of mites, is eschewed in England for a similar reason.

A well-set insect, according to our English notion, should have

its wings curved as in fig. (a), p. 108, and, from above, a line drawn from tip to tip of the fore-wings should be a little in advance of the head, as shown in the accompanying figure of *A. prodromaria*; this is the general rule, but, of course,

where the head is prominently placed, as in *M. stellatarum*, this rule cannot be observed.

Removing insects from the setting-board should not be attempted till the specimens are perfectly dry. This will, of course, depend much on the time of year and state of the weather, as well as on the size and nature of the insect. If the abdomen be stiff, the wings are almost sure to be so also. Insect forceps should always be used when specimens require to be shifted.

Quick drying, as in an oven, on the hob, or other hot situation, may sometimes be necessary, as, for instance, when we have to return home from a country trip, and have more saddles stocked with insects than we can manage to convey in our setting-house; but great precautions must be taken firstly to brace down the tips and borders of the wings, or they will cockle up; secondly, that the heat be not too great; and thirdly, that mice, cockroaches, ants, &c., cannot attack them.

The **setting-house** is constructed with grooves at suitable intervals for the reception of the saddles. It is usually furnished with a handle at the top, to carry it about by. Many combine a store box at the back, and have a portion partitioned off for nets, collecting boxes, lantern, sugaring tin, home killing apparatus, larva tins, &c., and a drawer for pins, braces, setting bristles, body supports, removing forceps, pocket lens, field killing apparatus, &c. Ventilation, by means of perforated zinc or wire gauze, must be attended to, otherwise the insects will not dry quickly. Young han's should be careful to put their captures away as soon as set.

lest some mouse, wasp, cockroach, or other vermin should destroy them. If there be ants in the house, the only chance is to swing the setting-house, or to stand it on a chair, the four legs of which are inserted into gallipots of water.

Resetting.—When a specimen has been badly set, never stretched at all, or has “sprung,” we first subject it to the fumes of the laurel jar, or the damp air of the wet sand pan, until it becomes sufficiently limp to manipulate; and then we set it out again to our liking. Insects re-set should be left longer on the setting-boards than those set for the first time. When, in our estimation, they are in a proper state for removal, we should take them off, and, holding them underside up, lightly touch the insertions of the four wings with a mixture composed of white shellac dissolved in naphtha, and then strap them down again to the saddle, for a few hours, until the liquid glue, or whatever else we use, has become dry, otherwise re-set insects are almost certain to “spring.”

Repairing damaged specimens may be effected by means of a *very* slight application of prepared gum tragacanth, which is nearly colourless, and dull when dry; occasionally we may require in addition some backing of tissue paper. Antennæ, head, tails, and even wings of other specimens, may be used to supply deficiencies. This is all very well for one's own cabinet, but insects so decorated should not be sent away as “fine specimens” in “exchange,” or the sender may lie under a possibly unjust imputation.

In Re-pinning, care should be taken to place the pin in the old hole, otherwise, in all probability, somebody will accuse you of having a foreigner in your collection. A little gum may be used to prevent the pin from shifting.

To remove grease some pains are necessary. When the insects are small, they may be pinned to a piece of cork loaded with lead, and sunk bodily in benzole, pure spirits of turpentine, or rectified naphtha, and there left from twenty-four hours to a fortnight, when they may be removed, placed on a bed of powdered French chalk (best), pipe-clay, or magnesia, covered over with the same, and left to dry; after which such powder as may adhere, must be gently blown off, or cautiously brushed off with a camel's hair or sable brush. With larger insects it is as well to break off the abdomina, number them, and treat them separately. Dr. Wallace recommends that they be first roasted, to start the grease, and then boiled in benzole, in a water bath, to get it out. If the bodies are very bad, it will be necessary to slit them up with a pair of embroidery scissors, remove the contents, and replace with blotting-paper or cotton wool; but, inasmuch

as prevention is better than cure, it is best, in the case of those species which we know, from dire experience, are sure to go greasy, such as *Nona-griæ*, and other internal—or, as a friend of mine appropriately calls them, infernal—feeders, to prepare them while the bodies are yet fresh, otherwise we shall not have to wait long before having the mortification of seeing a horrid patch, slowly but surely, extending itself over the clean white paper of our cabinet drawers, and very difficult indeed to remove when once formed. We may try ironing with a hot iron, a piece of brown paper intervening, and, when we *think* we have got it out, re-paper the drawers; we may endeavour to soften it by benzole, and sop it up with pipe-clay, but the probability is that we shall be unsuccessful, or, at any rate, only partially successful. When, therefore, from want of forethought, we have any of our drawers in this mess, it is best to damp off the paper, and then to cut out the whole of the greasy cork, re-cork the parts removed, smooth down, and re-paper. Some, in addition to stuffing, put a little pad of blotting paper under the abdomen of the specimen.

Mould is another nuisance with which the collector has to deal. The best way is to take the following precautions against its occurrence. Firstly, never place your cabinet or store box shelves against an external wall of a house, nor in a sky parlour. If you live in a terrace, take advantage of your next door neighbour's chimney-stack, and place your cabinet with its back against the corresponding part of your room; raise it a trifle from the ground, that air may pass underneath, and do not let it touch the wall for a similar reason. Above all, if you are in the habit of killing or relaxing your insects with laurel, take care that your poison is perfectly free from damp, and do not leave your specimens in the laurel jar a moment longer than is absolutely necessary.

Another method is to kyanise each specimen, by touching the underside of the abdomen with either a solution of phœnic acid (one part to six of sulphuric æther or rectified spirits), or with a weak solution of corrosive sublimate (six grains to the ounce of spirit)—this solution must on no account be used too strong, or the specimens will assume precisely the appearance you are desirous of preventing—that is, they will *look* just as if mildewed; it is therefore best to test the strength of your solution by drawing a streak of it over a piece of black paper, upon which it should leave no mark when dry.

NOTE.—Carbolic acid has very similar properties to those of phœnic acid, and is, of course, very much cheaper. The latter (made from indigo) is, however, that which is most strongly recommended.

Mites are the worst of all the evils we have to contend with. Here, stringent preventive measures are most necessary. In the first

place, the cabinet or store boxes should be as nearly air-tight as possible; every insect, before being placed in the collection, should undergo quarantine; that is, should be placed in a store box the atmosphere of which is so impregnated with the vapour of benzine, or other killing agent, that these pests will be effectually extirpated. The kyanising, as above, is a great protection; so, too, is high setting. It has been noticed that *Psoci* and *Acari* always attack the insects at the bottom of a box, and leave those at the top untouched; it has therefore been proposed to turn the cabinet topsy-turvy; but this has its *drawbacks*. Camphor and benzole both have a great tendency to make insects go greasy. Loose mercury is very objectionable. Insecticides (such as powdered *Pyrethrum roseum*, or Russian tansy) are apt to get about the drawers, and look untidy—oils of Cajuput, Anise, Thyme, Marjoram, Amber, Turpentine, &c., make greasy marks, if not used with great caution. A good cabinet—quarantine—and kyanising are the things. *Tineæ*, *Dermestes*, &c., in a collection, must be the result of gross carelessness.

Store boxes, of the best make, kept like books in a bookcase, made to resemble books, and labelled as to the contents, are far superior to cabinets. They are rarely attacked by mites, owing to the upright position in which they are placed; are more readily referred to; are more portable than cabinet drawers (no small advantage if we want to compare our *Eupithæciæ*, *Dicroramphæ*, *Scopariæ*, or other group, with some distant collection); and, moreover, similar boxes may be added *ad libitum* as we require them for use.

The cabinet demands considerable attention. First, as regards the material of which it is composed, and the young collector must use great caution in making his selection. The wood *best* adapted for insect cabinets is MAHOGANY; the *worst*, cedar; all such as contain resinous matter should be studiously avoided, for, after a year or two, the specimens will be utterly ruined by a deposition of little black specks upon them; even, in some cases, great blebs of turpentine matter will condense upon the glasses.

Every drawer should be made by gauge-work, so that they can be shifted about to different parts of the cabinet. The immense advantage of this system is that in re-arranging we have only to empty, say the last drawer, prepare it, transfer the contents of the first drawer to it, then prepare that which *was* the first drawer and transfer to it the contents of the second, so that No. 40, say, becomes No. 1; No. 1—No. 2; No. 2—No. 3; and so on. The "Standish" cabinet, made of thoroughly seasoned wood, on the above principle is simply perfection, and eager indeed is competition to secure one of the original make.

The favourite number of drawers is forty, which just nicely contain a good working collection of British *Lepidoptera*.

The size of the drawers. Averaging 18 inches *square* (324 square inches) in superficies—2 in. outside depth—1½ in. inside from cork to glass, but collectors must judge for themselves as to the proportions.

Camphor cells may be made to run all round the drawer; this, of course, adds much to the expense. Sometimes only the front of the drawer is fitted in this manner. When we do not use camphor, it follows that no camphor cells will be required.

The glasses which cover the drawer should be “patent flatted sheet,” such as used by picture frame makers, and they should be secured in frames which accurately fit, and flange over, the drawer. If they are properly made, great care is required in removing the glasses, for should this be done too quickly, the wings may be forced off some of the smaller species, by atmospheric pressure. It may also be noted here that electricity is another agent by which the wings of small specimens are frequently distorted and broken. Its generation is due to the common habit of wiping the glasses of our cabinets with a silk pocket handkerchief.

The cork with which the bottom of the drawer is lined, should be of the finest quality, and very nearly, if not quite, a quarter of an inch in thickness; if the cork is not close grained, it is best to fix together two pieces, each an eighth of an inch thick, for the odds are that, if the pin passes through a hole in the top piece it will come against a sound part in the under one; the cork should be glued together, so as to form one sheet the size of the interior of the drawers; it should then be well smoothed with glass paper on a “rubber,” that is, a block of wood or cork; when thoroughly prepared, it should be fixed into the drawer and kept in position by weights, until the glue is set; and, lastly, before proceeding to paper it, two coats of thin size must be applied and allowed to dry; otherwise the paper will be more or less disfigured by stains.

Papering. The paper used is, I believe, technically known as “tea paper.” Good qualities are sponginess, even surface, and great whiteness without polish. A little alum should be added to the paste, to harden it, and a minute portion of bichloride of mercury, in solution, may be mixed with it for protective purposes, if thought desirable.

Re-papering necessitates first stripping off the old paper. This may be done by sponging with hot water, until the moisture penetrates to the paste and softens it. When drawers have been papered or repapered, they may be stood up bottom side towards a fire to dry.

Whitening is a process which may often save us the trouble of repapering. Oxide of zinc is mixed with milk, until a fluid, about the thickness of cream, is formed; a *very* minute portion of lamp black should be added, to increase the whiteness: some prefer a slight shade of blue, which may be got by the addition of a little ultra-marine. Having cleaned out the drawer, and rubbed some oxide of zinc powder into the pin holes, the whitening, on a soft broad brush, should be applied in one direction; when very nearly dry, a “dabber” (a bit of wool wrapped in linen) may be used, to obliterate the brush marks.

Arranging. First cut slips of paper as long as the width of the drawer, paste down one of them on a board of soft wood; on this, arrange in order, side by side, the largest specimen of the largest species in each row. If you do not possess any particular insect reference as to alar expanse must be made to STANTON'S Manual, or better still, to some friend's collection. When satisfied, put an unattached strip, parallel to the one on the board, and mark off the points intermediate between the tips of the wings; transfer, and dot off lightly with a pencil, the measurements on the paper of the cabinet, first at the top end of the drawer, and then at the bottom, otherwise if “the eye” is trusted to, the divisional lines will very likely partake of the slantindicular direction.

The order in which insects are usually placed in the cabinet, is first the most typical male at the top of the row, then the other males, and below them the females, and one or two specimens should be set under-side uppermost; or, better still, in the case of butterflies, a male and female pinned sideways with their wings over their backs, as in the annexed figure of *A. Latona*, should be placed *tête-à-tête*; these should come last in the series.

Tickets are made out of thick writing paper, by the aid of a punch of suitable size and having a number corresponding with the history in the diary of the specimen to which it is attached. In some rare cases, even the whole history itself, should be attached to each specimen.

Dividing off may be effected in many ways. Ink lines mark the paper, so that if, at any time, we have to alter our arrangement, the drawers will have to be repapered. Pencil lines are similarly objectionable, but not to so great an extent. The plans by which the paper is not damaged, in case we want to re-arrange at some future time, seem, to my mind, best—

First, fine ink lines may be ruled on white paper similar to that by which the drawers are covered; then, with an iron straight-edge and a sharp round-bladed table knife, we may cut off strips of paper each with a middle line; by means of short pin points, we can fix these in the position of our pencil marks in the cabinet; and, if there be any places where the strips do not fit flatly to the drawer, they too must be pegged down with pin points. Another plan is to rule off and similarly peg down very narrow strips of dull black paper, but this is almost too conspicuous. A third plan is to divide off, by means of black silk or cotton; but there is great difficulty in keeping it flat to the drawer, and it shows up any unevenness of surface to an alarming extent. The most scientific is to have no lines at all, but it must be a first-rate collection that will bear this.

Labelling is carried out by cutting up a List of British Lepidoptera, arranged on the plan of STANTON'S Manual, which is by far the best text-book of British Lepidoptera yet published. It need scarcely be noted that family names come at the commencement of a family; generic at the commencement, *above* the first species, of a genus; specific *below* the species indicated. They may be fixed by means of pin points, or curved and stuck, concave side downwards, with a minute dab of paste.

THE END.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
Egg of <i>Pieris brassicæ</i>	3
" " <i>Vanessa urticæ</i>	3
" " <i>Selenia</i>	4
Postal egg box	9
Chip box strengthened... ..	12
Oak leaf eaten by larvæ	13
Shoot of <i>Epilobium</i> distorted by larvæ	14
Twig-like larva of <i>U. sambucaria</i> ...	19
"Digger"	20
" folded up	20
Handy box for larva collecting... ..	24
" " " " " closed	24
Sweeping net	26
Section of larvarium... ..	31
Do. improved and for larvæ to burrow	32
Sphinx larva (<i>S. ligustri</i>)... ..	53
"Prominent" larva (<i>N. camolina</i>) ...	54
Spherical hairy <i>Noctua</i> larva (<i>D. Orion</i>)	54
Sub-dorsal and spiracular lines (<i>P. brassicæ</i>)	59
Pattern on back of larva	59
Pupa of <i>S. ligustri</i>	61
" " <i>V. urticæ</i>	62
" " <i>P. Machaon</i>	62
Pupa fixed to wall (<i>P. brassicæ</i>)... ..	68
Apparatus for forcing	70
Pupa with spiked annulations	71
" " mappings of perfect insect (<i>S. carpinii</i>)	71
The end of chrysalis state (Tail piece)	72
Joints of an umbrella net (fixed end)	73
" " " " (sliding end)	73
The make of a bag net	74
The forceps net	75
Manner of fixing cork into a metal box	75

	PAGE
Chloroform bottle	76
The posture of the pugs (<i>E. centaureata</i>)... .. .	82
An attracting cage (for ♀)	88
Apparatus for working sawfly	89
A sugar "plum" (<i>L. vitellina</i>)	94
Sugaring net (triangular)	95
" " "drum"	96
A new moth trap (sugar)	99
Apparatus for capturing at lamps... .. .	100
A treasure at light (<i>S. saccharia</i>)... .. .	101
A net for working lamps... .. .	102
The American moth trap	103
Perspective view of ditto... .. .	104
A well-pinned moth (front view)	108
" " " " (side view)	108
Magnified drawing (<i>Sc. ulmella</i>)... .. .	110
How to pack a box for the post	110
Postal Box	110
Neuration of a butterfly's wings	111
Plumule of <i>P. napi</i>	111
" " <i>A. crategi</i>	111
" " <i>S. Megæra</i>	111
Battledore scale of <i>Lycæna</i>	111
Head, antennæ, &c., of Butterfly	112
Section of a saddle	113
A brace seen from above	113
" " " side view	113
A setting bristle	114
Method of setting on saddle	114
" " " by "four straps"... .. .	116
A well-set insect (<i>A. prodromaria</i>).	117
" " " (<i>M. stellatarum</i>)	117
Specimen showing under-side (<i>A.</i> <i>Latona</i>)	122
The end and the beginning	123

INDEX.

EGG STATE. Pages 1—12.

Eggs—	PAGE	Eggs—	PAGE
Appearances of	3	Mounting	12
Describing	11	Observation of	9
Duration of	2	Preservation of	11
Fertility of	8	Searching for	4
Forcing.....	8	Situations of.....	1
Hunting for	1	Times for	2
Laying	5	Transmission of	9
Management of	7	Treatment of	9

CATERPILLAR STATE. Pages 12—60.

Caterpillars—		Caterpillars—	
Ailments of	48	Indications of	18
Beating for	23	Manipulation of	41
Breeding	28	Night searching for.....	22
Breeding house for	33	Observation of	55
Cages for	29	Preservation of	60
Cannibal	45	Protection of	55
Capturing	23	Searching for	12
Changing food of.....	43	Shaking for	25
Describing	56	Situations of.....	17
Feeding.....	39	Soils for	32
Food for	34	Substitute foods for.....	34
Forms of	52	Sweeping for	26
Fumigating for	25	Times for	20
Habits of	18	Traps for	23
Hibernating	44	Variety breeding.....	46

CHRYsalis STATE. Pages 61—72.

Chrysalides—	PAGE	Chrysalides—	PAGE
Attachments of	61	Management of	68
Cocoons of.....	62	Observation of	71
Damping	69	Preservation of	72
Digging for	67	Raking for	66
Dragging for.....	68	Situations of.....	64
Forcing	70	Stubbing for.....	66
Forms of	63	Times for	63
Localities for	64	Transmission of	71

PERFECT STATE. Pages 73—123.

American moth trap	103	Pairing	105
Arranging	122	Papering drawers.....	121
Attracting by ♀	87	Pelting	84
Beating	84	Pinning.....	108
Blowing	85	Pins	109
Boxing	86	Preservation	112
Brushing	84	Prospecting	78
Butterfly hunting	77	Pumping	84
Cabinet	120	Relaxing	108
Collecting	73	Removing	117
Drying	117	Repairing	118
Fanning	85	Resetting	118
Fishing	86	Sallow-bloom ..	89
Flat-setting	116	Secret of collecting	78
Flowers	89	Setting	113
Four-strap setting ..	116	Situations	82
Fumigating	85	Store boxes	120
Grease	118	Stupifying.....	105
Ivy-bloom	91	Sugaring	94
Killing	106	Sweeping	85
Labelling	123	Switching	85
Lamps ..	100	Thatch beating	85
Light, attracting to ..	103	Times	79
Mites	119	Transmission by P.O.	110
Nothing	77	Trunk beating	84
Moth trap (sugar) ..	99	Watching	81
Mould	119	Whitening drawers	122
Observation	111	White surfaces	104

Books on Entomology Pulished by GURNEY & JACKSON.

British Flies (*Syrphidae*, &c.), including a Synonymic Catalogue of the *European* Species. By G. H. VERRALL, President of the Entomological Society of London, royal 8vo, cloth, 780 pages, with 458 Figures, £1 11s. 6d. net.

The Catalogue may be had separately, price 5s. net.

The Natural History of the Tineina. By H. T. STANTON, assisted by Professor ZELLER, J. W. DOUGLAS, and Professor FREY. Vols I. to XIII., with coloured plates, 12s. 6d. each.

A Manual of British Butterflies and Moths. By H. T. STANTON. With many Woodcuts; 12mo. Vol. I., comprising the Butterflies and stout-bodied moths, 4s. 6d. Vol. II., the slender-bodied and small Moths, 5s. 6d.

By the same Author:—

The Tineina of Southern Europe. 8vo, 16s.

The Tineina of Syria and Asia Minor. 8vo, 4s.

The Tineina of North America. By (the late) Dr. BRACKENRIDGE CLEMENS. With Notes by H. T. STANTON, 8vo, 12s 6d.

The British Tortrices. By S. J. WILKINSON. 8vo, with 4 plates, £1 5s.

An Accentuated List of British Lepidoptera, with Hints on the Derivation of the Names. Prepared by the Entomological Societies of Oxford and Cambridge, 8vo, 5s.

THE LIST WITHOUT THE DERIVATIONS, 8vo, sewed, 3d.

Elements of Entomology: an Outline of the Natural History and Classification of British Insects. By WM. S. DALLAS, F.L.S. Post 8vo, 2s 6d

The World of Insects: a Guide to its Wonders. By J. W. DOUGLAS. 12mo, sewed, 3s. 6d.

A Monographic Revision and Synopsis of the Trichoptera of the European Fauna. By ROBERT McLACHLAN, F.R.S., F.L.S., &c. Royal 8vo, illustrated with 59 Plates, giving about 2000 Figures. £3 10s. First additional Supplement sewed, 8s.

Practical Hints respecting Moths and Butterflies, with notices of their Localities; forming a Calendar of Entomological Operations throughout the year in pursuit of Lepidoptera. By RICHARD SHIELD. 12mo, stiff-paper wrapper, 3s.

The Entomologist's Annual, 1855 to 1874. Edited by H. T. STANTON, F.R.S. Comprising Notices of the New British Insects detected in each year, with other Original Papers. Fcp. 8vo, boards, 2s. 6d. each.

The Entomologists' Monthly Magazine: conducted by R. McLACHLAN, F.R.S., and others. On the first of every month, price 6d. Annual Volumes, 8vo, cloth, 7s. (The Second Series was commenced in January, 1890.)

Gurney & Jackson, 1, Paternoster Row,

(Successors to Mr. VAN VOORST.)

NOW PUBLISHING.

LEPIDOPTERA of the BRITISH ISLANDS

By CHAS. G. BARRETT, F.E.S.

CONTAINING DESCRIPTIONS OF SPECIES, VARIETIES, LARVÆ AND PUPÆ;
ALSO HABITS AND DISTRIBUTION OF ALL THE BRITISH SPECIES.

Monthly Parts, with Coloured Plates, 5/-

Subscribers, Twelve Parts, 54/-, without Plates, 10/-

L. REEVE and CO., Henrietta Steet, Covent Garden.

*On January 1st, 1901, was published, royal 8vo, cloth, 780 pages, with
458 figures, £1 11s. 6d. net.*

BRITISH FLIES

(SYRPHIDÆ, &c.)

Including a Synonymic Catalogue of the European Species.

By G. H. VERRALL.

President of the Entomological Society of London.

Catalogue may be had separately, price 5s. net.

GURNEY and JACKSON, 1, Paternoster Row (Mr. Van Voorst's Successors).

“NATURE,”

A WEEKLY ILLUSTRATED JOURNAL OF SCIENCE.

PRICE 6D.

“NATURE” contains Original Articles on all subjects coming within the domain of Science, contributed by the most eminent scientific writers of the day. It also contains Reviews of all recent scientific works; Correspondence Columns, which form a medium of scientific discussion and of intercommunication among men of Science; Accounts of the leading Scientific Serials; Abstracts of the more valuable papers which appear in foreign journals; Reports of the Proceedings of the Principal Scientific Societies and Academies of the World; and Notes on all matters of current scientific interest.

MACMILLAN and CO., Ltd.

Office: St Martin's Street, London, W.C.

The best and most popular Illustrated Magazine devoted to interests
of Nature Students undoubtedly is

THE NATURALISTS' JOURNAL.

EDITED BY CHARLES MOSLEY.

*Annual Subscription, 2s. 6d. prepaid; post free to any part of the World.
Send Stamps for Specimen Copy.*

A superior edition is also published at 5s per annum, with hand-
coloured plates. Specimen Copy, Sixpence.

THE MUSEUM PRESS, LOCKWOOD, HUDDERSFIELD.

WATKINS & DONCASTER,

Naturalists,

36 STRAND, LONDON, W.C.

FIVE DOORS FROM CHARING CROSS.

Every description of Apparatus and Cabinets of the best make for Entomology and general Natural History, &c.

Wire or Cane Ring Net and Stick, 1/3, 2/., 2/6. Umbrella Net (self-acting), 7/-; Pocket Folding Net (Wire or Cane), 3/6, 4/6. Corked Pocket Boxes, 6d., 9d., 1/., 1/6. Zinc Relaxing Boxes, 1/., 1/6, 2/. Chip Boxes (nested), 4 dozen, 7d. Entomological Pins (mixed), 1/- and 1/6 per oz. Pocket Lantern, 2/6, 5/., 8/-. Sugaring Tin (with brush), 1/6, 2/-. Mite Destroyer, 1/6 per lb. Store Boxes, 2/., 2/6, 3/6, 4/., 5/., 6/-. Setting Boards, from 5d., complete set of 14, 10/6. Setting Houses, 9/6, 11/6, 14/-. Larva Boxes, 9d., 1/., 1/6. Breeding Cages, 2/6 4/., 5/., 7/6. Improved Moth Trap, 33/- Dixon Net for taking moths from street lamps, &c., without climbing, 3/6.

A very fine and large stock of British and Foreign Butterflies, Beetles, Birds' Eggs, &c.

As we receive parcels direct from our correspondents abroad, we are enabled to offer many good species of Lepidoptera from time to time.

Throughout the winter a large selection of Living Chrysalids of British and Foreign Butterflies and Moths, including the gigantic Atlas and other Exotic Moths.

Collections of Natural History objects carefully named and arranged.

Books on all branches of Natural History kept in stock, many Books at reduced prices.

Label Lists of every description. The complete Label List of British Macro-Lepidoptera (Latin and English names), 1/6, post free.

One each of all the British Butterflies in a case, 25/-

A magnificent assortment of Preserved Caterpillars always in stock.

Birds and Animals Stuffed and Mounted in the best style by skilled workmen.

A full Catalogue (pp. 96) sent post free on application.